PROGRAM DIRECTORY

for use with

MVS/EXTENDED ARCHITECTURE DATA FACILITY PRODUCT

VERSION 2 RELEASE 3 MODIFICATION 0

of

PROGRAM 5665-XA2

FMIDs

HDP2230
JDP2325

This directory contains information concerning the materials and procedures associated with the installation of this product.

IBM

International Business Machines Corporation

Memorandum To: Licensees Of MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product
MVS/XA DFP, 5665-XA2

Subject: Release 03, Modification Level 00
Features 5745/5746/5747

Thank you for your order.

Please review the enclosed Program Shipping Request to ensure that you have received all items listed.

If there are any discrepancies between the package contents and the Program Shipping Request, report them via the Questionnaire which is enclosed for your convenience.

PRGDIR7F13
7/87

HOW TO USE THIS PROGRAM DIRECTORY:

This directory contains information concerning the material and procedures associated with the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, which is a complete replacement, of any prior MVS/XA release, and should be reviewed prior to installation and be retained for future reference.

THE PROGRAM DIRECTORY AND PRODUCT INSTALLATION READER'S COMMENT FORM:

The stamped response form for reader's comments for this program directory is attached to the user memo distributed with the product. If the reader does not receive this response form, address comments to IBM Corporation, P.O. Box 50020, Data Products Release Control, Department M14, San Jose, California 95150.

Preface

This document is intended for the system programmer responsible for the installation and maintenance of MVS/XA Data Facility Product Version 2 Release 3 Modification 0 (MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0).

Before installing MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, check the Preventive Service Planning (PSP) Facility for updates to the information and procedures in this program directory. Refer to "Preventive Service Planning (PSP) Facility" on page 9.

Major Sections Within This Document

This document contains the following major sections:

- **Program Product Introduction**

  Section 1.0 identifies the program product.

- **Program Materials**

  Sections 2.0 identifies program materials for documentation, microfiche, basic, and optional materials. Appendix A contains the optional material tape contents for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

- **Program Support**

  Section 3.0 describes the IBM support available for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

- **Installation Considerations and Requirements**

  Section 5.0 identifies the resources and considerations for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

- **Installation Instructions**

  Sections 6.0 through 10.0 provide detailed installation instructions for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

- **Appendices**

  - Appendix A lists the contents of the optional machine-readable material tapes.
  - Appendix B contains a summary of deletions.
  - Appendix C identifies SMP element status messages.
  - Appendix D describes JCL to update SYS1.IMAGELIB.
  - Appendix E contains the DFP cleanup jobs.
  - Appendix F contains the APAR list for HDP2230.
  - Appendix G contains the SMP Modification Control Statements

Generic Terms/Acronyms Used in This Document

The following list indicates acronyms or "generic" product names used throughout this document:

Generic Term/Acronyms	Product
ISMF	Interactive Storage Management Facility
MVS/SP 2.2.0	MVS/System Product Version 2 Release 2 Modification Level 0 or later releases
MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0	MVS/XA Data Facility Product Version 2 Release 3 Modification Level 0
MVS/370 DFP	MVS/370 Data Facility Product
MVSCP	MVS Configuration Program
NLS	National Language Support
OS/VS2 Rel 3.8	Supported releases of OS/VS2 MVS operating system with System/370 Architecture, without MVS/370 Data Facility Product installed

Table of Contents

1.0 Introduction

This is the program directory for installing MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product (MVS/XA DFP) Version 2, Release 3, Modification Level 0 (HDP2230)[1] along with (JDP2325)[2] which together are referred to as MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires the installation of MVS/SP Version 2.2.0 or higher. For information concerning the installation of MVS/SP 2.2.0, refer to the program directory packaged with it.

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 provides software support via data management support, device support, program library management support, and utility function for any IBM processor operating in System/370 Extended Architecture mode. When installed with either MVS/System Product-JES2 Version 2 or MVS/System Product-JES3 Version 2 (MVS/SP 2.2.0), the combination is an operating system environment called MVS/Extended Architecture (MVS/XA).

This program is distributed through a series of sequentially numbered program versions, releases, and modification levels. Each **version** of a program product is considered a separate program product and has its own basic license and documentation. A **release** replaces the entire program code. A **modification** generally replaces only changed portions of the code. The initial availability of this program is Version 2, Release 3, Modification Level 0. For each subsequent release, the modification level will be set to zero, and the release level will be incremented by one.

References made to IBM program products in this program directory are not intended to state or imply that only IBM's program products may be used; any equivalent program conforming to IBM published interfaces may be used.

1.1 MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 contains the following new Functions and Enhancements

- SYSGEN Simplification
- Integrated Catalog Facility Recovery Enhancements
  - Automatic orientation after recovery
  - Locking facility
  - Alias support during EXPORT/IMPORT
  - SMF Recording on EXPORT
- System Constraint Relief
  - VSAM 31-bit addressing mode enhanced
  - DADSM 31-bit addressing mode support
  - Support for scheduler work area (SWA) above 16Mb virtual
  - More than 1635 Data Definition Statements
  - Expiration dates beyond 1999
  - Concatenation enhancement

---

[1] FMID = HDP2230

[2] FMID = JDP2325 (NLS English, ISPF application panels, messages, and help

- VSAM Enhancements
  - AIX Synchronization
  - Local Shared Resource Support Enhanced
  - Linear Data Sets
- Interactive storage management facility (ISMF) volume applications.
  - Volume Application: allows the storage administrator to analyze, manage, and report on DASD storage interactively.
- Enhancements to the ISMF data set application.
  - Adds FILTER CLEAR and REFRESH commands for list manipulation.
  - Displays the creation, expiration, and last reference dates of data sets with four digit years (for example, 2001). Also accepts years with four digits as well as two digits as input in the selection criteria.
  - Deletes data set from VTOC-generated list.
- Worldwide availability of national language support with Japanese language characters for ISMF panels in both MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 2 Release 2 and MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 2 Release 3. Includes the following Japanese and U.S. English characters:
  - Japanese language characters for static displays (directions, instructions, and help panels) with english text for data display and input.
  - U. S. English text for static display, dynamic data display, and input.

  Both language options may be installed and used in environments with the IBM 5550 family of displays. The IBM 5550 family of displays are not supported in all countries.
- Enhancement to catalog address space (CAS). This function allows users to communicate with the catalog address space (CAS) using the MVS operator console MODIFY command. This will give system programmers direct, external control of some of the functional recovery capabilities designed into CAS.

  The use of this function allows greater diagnostic flexibility and additional recovery possibilities. The purpose, along with previous ICF catalog recovery enhancements, is to provide transparent recovery to avert cancellation of a user job or a system IPL. In addition, this function provides information about CAS and its environment.

2.0 Program Materials

2.1 Basic Machine-Readable Material

The distribution medium for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is either on 3480 tape cartridges or on standard-labeled, 9-track magnetic tapes recorded at 1600 BPI or 6250 BPI. The tapes are in SMP relative file format. The first file of the product tape(s) contains the SMP modification control statements. All subsequent files contain IEBCOPY unloaded partitioned data sets which SMP will process.

Following is the tape data related to MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 listed under tape type:

Media	FMID(s)	Feature Number	External Tape Label	Tape VOLSER
1600	HDP2230 & JDP2325	5745	HDP22300BJ1	DP230A
			HDP22300BJ2	DP230B
6250	HDP2230 & JDP2325	5746	HDP22300BJ1	DP2230
3480	HDP2230 & JDP2325	5747	HDP22300BJ1	DP2230

The basic machine-readable material for HDP2230 and JDP2325 contain the following files:

```
FILE    NAME          BLKSIZE
----    ----          -------
   1    SMPMCS        006480
   2    HDP2230.F1    006400
            AHELP       0032 MASTER(S)/ 0021 ALIAS(ES)
   3    HDP2230.F2    006400
            AMACLIB     0183 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AGENLIB     0112 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            ASAMPLIB    0020 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            APROCLIB    0005 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AMODGEN     0040 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AIMAGE      0196 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            ATSOMAC     0008 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
   4    HDP2230.F3    006144
            ACMDLIB     0016 MASTER(S)/ 0010 ALIAS(ES)
            AOS12       0009 MASTER(S)/ 0008 ALIAS(ES)
            ALPALIB     0006 MASTER(S)/ 0002 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSU0       0271 MASTER(S)/ 0002 ALIAS(ES)
            ALINKLIB    0007 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            CIPLIB      0031 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSD0       0551 MASTER(S)/ 0046 ALIAS(ES)
            ADGTLLIB    0277 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOS05       0005 MASTER(S)/ 0002 ALIAS(ES)
            AOS04       0023 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSC5       0064 MASTER(S)/ 0004 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSA0       0275 MASTER(S)/ 0001 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSA1       0002 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            ANUCLEUS    0017 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSCA       0010 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSB3       0001 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSC2       0001 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSD7       0040 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSC6       0037 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            AOSD8       0116 MASTER(S)/ 0001 ALIAS(ES)

   5    JDP2325.F1    003120
            ADGTPLIB    0462 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
            ADGTMLIB    0047 MASTER(S)/ 0000 ALIAS(ES)
```

2.2 *Optional Machine-Readable Material - Restricted Materials of IBM*

The following are **restricted materials of IBM.**

The optional machine-readable material (source code) for MVS/XA 2.3.0 is distributed on 3480 tape cartridges or on unlabeled magnetic tapes, available in two densities: 1600 BPI or 6250 BPI.

Media	Feature Number	External Tape Label	Blocksize	LRECL
1600	7129	HDP2230SYM1	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM2	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM3	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM4	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM5	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM6	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM7	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM8	12000	80
6250	7131	HDP2230SYM1	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM2	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM3	12000	80
3480	7962	HDP2230SYM1	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM2	12000	80
		HDP2230SYM3	12000	80

Notes:

1. The contents of the optional material tapes for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 are shown in the table in "Appendix A. Contents of Optional Machine-Readable Material Tapes" on page 106.
2. DFP Common Services component 566528460 is Object Code Only (OCO) and no source code will be provided (MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0).
3. ISMF component 566528461 is Object Code Only (OCO) and no source code will be provided (MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0).
4. Device Console Services component 566528463 is Object Code Only (OCO) and no source code will be provided (MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0).

2.2.1 Create a Source Library

The creation of source libraries on disk requires the use of the IEBUPDTE utility to process each of the tape files as SMPCNTL. The following is an example of JCL that can be used to create a source library.

```
//CREATE   JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//SYMLIB   EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              CREATE A SOURCE LIBRARY                        *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SYSPRINT DD    DUMMY  <Suppress printing all source>
//SYSIN    DD    DSNAME=SRCE,VOL=SER=TAPEIN,UNIT=TAPE,
//  DISP=SHR,
//  LABEL=(xx,NL),DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=12000)
//SYSUT2   DD    <Parameters describing the output PDS>
```

Notes:

1. Set xx = File Number
2. The size of SYSUT2 is dependent upon the file being loaded. Refer to "Appendix A. Contents of Optional Machine-Readable Material Tapes" on page 106.

2.3 Program Publications

The following publication provides the information needed by data processing management and technical staff to evaluate the applicability of the program product to their installation.

1. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: General Information, GC26-4142

2.3.1 Basic Documentation from IBM Software Distribution (ISD)

One copy of the following licensed and unlicensed documentation is sent to each MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 licensee. For additional copies, contact your IBM representative.

1. MVS/Extended Architecture Integrated Catalog Administration: Access Method Services Reference, GC26-4135
2. MVS/Extended Architecture VSAM Catalog Administration: Access Method Services Reference, GC26-4136
3. MVS/Extended Architecture Catalog Administration Guide, GC26-4138
4. MVS/Extended Architecture Checkpoint/Restart User's Guide, GC26-4139
5. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Administration Guide, GC26-4140
6. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Administration: Macro Instruction Reference, GC26-4141
7. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: General Information, GC26-4142

8. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: Licensed Program Specifications, GC26-4144

9. MVS/Extended Architecture Magnetic Tape Labels and File Structure Administration, GC26-4145

10. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: Master Index, GC26-4146

11. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: Planning Guide, GC26-4147

12. MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GC26-4148

13. MVS/Extended Architecture System-Data Administration, GC26-4149

14. MVS/Extended Architecture VSAM Administration Guide, GC26-4151

15. MVS/Extended Architecture VSAM Administration: Macro Instruction Reference, GC26-4152

16. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Administration: Utilities, GC26-4150

17. MVS/Extended Architecture Storage Management Library: Storage Management Reader's Guide, GC26-4265[3]

18. MVS/Extended Architecture Interactive Storage Management Facility User's Guide, GC26-4266

19. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: Customization, GC26-4267

20. MVS/Extended Architecture Expiration Dates Beyond 1999 APAR Numbers OZ97150, OZ97151; GC26-4295

21. MVS/Extended Architecture Expiration Dates Beyond 1999 APAR Numbers OZ97150, OZ97151; GC26-4296

22. MVS/370 Expiration Dates Beyond 1999 APAR Numbers OZ97146, OZ97147, OZ97148; GC26-4297

23. MVS/Extended Architecture Linear Data Sets APAR Numbers OZ97141, OZ97143; GC26-4298

24. MVS/Extended Architecture Linear Data Sets APAR Number OZ97140, GC26-4299

25. MVS/370 Linear Data Sets APAR Number OZ97139, GC26-4300

26. MVS/Extended Architecture Integrated Catalog Administration: Access Method Services Reference Summary, GX26-3724

27. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: Diagnosis Guide, LY27-9521

28. MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product Version 2: Diagnosis Reference, LY27-9530

---

[3] This document lists all the books within the DFP library, their order numbers, and a brief description of their content. The Reader's Guide also lists other libraries related to storage management, including the Storage Subsystem, DFDSS, and DFHSM libraries.

2.3.2 Licensed Optional Documentation - Restricted Materials of IBM

One copy of the following optional licensed documentation may be ordered by feature number 7140. For additional copies, contact your IBM representative.

1. MVS/Extended Architecture Access Method Services Logic Volume 1, LY26-3953
2. MVS/Extended Architecture Access Method Services Logic Volume 2, LY26-3997
3. MVS/Extended Architecture BDAM Logic, LY26-3893
4. MVS/Extended Architecture Catalog Diagnosis Reference, LY26-3956
5. MVS/Extended Architecture Checkpoint/Restart Supervisor Call Logic, LY26-3957
6. MVS/Extended Architecture Common VTOC Access Facility Diagnosis Reference, LY26-3958
7. MVS/Extended Architecture CVOL Processor Logic, LY26-3895
8. MVS/Extended Architecture DADSM Diagnosis Reference, LY26-3961
9. MVS/Extended Architecture ISAM Logic, LY26-3894
10. MVS/Extended Architecture Linkage Editor Logic, LY26-3963
11. MVS/Extended Architecture Loader Logic, LY26-3901
12. MVS/Extended Architecture Media Manager Diagnosis Guide and Reference, LY26-3965
13. MVS/Extended Architecture Open/Close/EOV Logic, LY26-3966
14. MVS/Extended Architecture SAM Logic, LY26-3967
15. MVS/Extended Architecture Utilities Logic, LY26-3968
16. MVS/Extended Architecture VIO Logic, LY26-3900
17. MVS/Extended Architecture VSAM Logic, LY26-3970

2.4 Microfiche - Restricted Materials of IBM

The following are **restricted materials of IBM.**

One copy of each microfiche package may be ordered by specifying feature number 7150. For additional copies, contact your IBM representative.

The microfiche for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is described below:

HDP2230 Microfiche Titles

1. Data Facility Product/Extended Architecture Version 2 Release 3 Module Listings, LJB6-0172

2. Data Facility Product/Extended Architecture Version 2 Release 3 Data Areas, LJB6-0173

3. Data Facility Product/Extended Architecture Version 2 Release 3 Cross-Reference Listings, LJB6-0174

Notes:

1. DFP Common Services component 566528460 is Object Code Only (OCO) and no microfiche will be provided (MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0).

2. ISMF component 566528461 is Object Code Only (OCO) and no microfiche will be provided (MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0).

3. Device Console Services component 566528463 is Object Code Only (OCO) and no microfiche will be provided (MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0).

4. No microfiche will be provided for JDP2325.

3.0 Program Support

3.1 Program Services

This program product is classified as a Licensed Program. IBM Central Service, IBM Support Center, and local program support services are provided for the program product.

Contact your IBM Marketing Representative for information concerning these program services.

3.1.1 Preventive Service Planning (PSP) Facility

Before installing MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, check the Preventive Service Planning (PSP) Facility for updates to the information and procedures in this program directory. To retrieve information from the PSP Facility for this MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 release, contact the IBM Support Center and specify the following information:

Release	Upgrade	Subset
MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0	MVSXADFP230	HDP2230 (See Note 2)
MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0	MVSXADFP230	

Note:

1. When installing additional products with this package, consult the appropriate PSP Facilities.
2. Subset HDP2230 contains the information for HDP2230, JDP2325, and JDP2326.

3.1.2 Statement of Support Procedures

Report any difficulties you have using this program to your IBM Support Center. If an APAR (Authorized Program Analysis Report), is required, submit it to the location identified in the Programming System General Information Manual(PSGIM) as being responsible for the failing component.

APAR documentation should also be submitted to the following address:

IBM Corporation
APAR Processing Center
Building 088
5600 Cottle Road
San Jose, California 95193

3.1.3 Field Engineering Service Numbers (FESNs) Used for Contacting the Support Center

Each component ID for MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0 is nine digits. Digits 1 through 9 represent the component id number; digits 3 through 9 represent the Field Engineering Service Number (FESN) for the component.

The following are arranged in alphabetical component name order:

Component ID and FESN	Component Name
566528430	Access Method Services
566528412	AMBLIST
566528424	Checkpoint/Restart
566528425	Common VTOC Access Facility (CVAF)
566528420	CVOL and VSAM Catalog
566528417	DADSM
566528416	DAM
566528402	DASD ERPs
566528463	Device Console Service
566528427	Device Exits
566528460	DFP Common Services
566528435	ICAPRTBL
566528443	IEBCOMPR
566528446	IEBCOPY
566528442	IEBDG
566528449	IEBEDIT
566528447	IEBGENER
566528444	IEBIMAGE
566528441	IEBISAM
566528437	IEBPTPCH
566528448	IEBUPDTE
566528439	IEFSTATR
566528440	IEHATLAS
566528438	IEHINITT/SVC 82
566528405	IEHLIST
566528407	IEHMOVE
566528406	IEHPROGM
566528434	ISAM
566528461	ISMF
566528408	Linkage Editor
566528411	Loader
566528415	Media Manager
566528450	Offline 3800 Utility
566528413	Open/Close/EOV
566528426	Overlay Supervisor
566528422	PAM
566528421	Password Protect
566528428	Program Fetch
566528414	SAM
566528429	SAM Subsystem Interface
566528445	SGIEH402
566528404	SYSGEN
566528401	Tape ERPs/SVC 91
566528409	TSO LINK/LOADGO Prompter
566528436	TSO Utility Interface
566528403	Unit Record ERPs
566528423	VIO
566528419	VSAM Block Processor
566528418	VSAM Integrated Catalog Facility
566528451	VSAM Open/Close/EOV
566528452	VSAM Record Management
566528431	3505/3525 Reader/Punch

The following are arranged in numerical component ID sequence:

Component ID and FESN	Component Name
566528401	Tape ERPs/SVC 91
566528402	DASD ERPs
566528403	Unit Record ERPs
566528404	SYSGEN
566528405	IEHLIST
566528406	IEHPROGM
566528407	IEHMOVE
566528408	Linkage Editor
566528409	TSO LINK/LOADGO Prompter
566528411	Loader

566528412	AMBLIST
566528413	Open/Close/EOV
566528414	SAM
566528415	Media Manager
566528416	DAM
566528417	DADSM
566528418	VSAM Integrated Catalog Facility
566528419	VSAM Block Processor
566528420	CVOL and VSAM Catalog
566528421	Password Protect
566528422	PAM
566528423	VIO
566528424	Checkpoint/Restart
566528425	Common VTOC Access Facility (CVAF)
566528426	Overlay Supervisor
566528427	Device Exits
566528428	Program Fetch
566528429	SAM Subsystem Interface
566528430	Access Method Services
566528431	3505/3525 Reader/Punch
566528434	ISAM
566528435	ICAPRTBL
566528436	TSO Utility Interface
566528437	IEBPTPCH
566528438	IEHINITT/SVC 82
566528439	IEFSTATR
566528440	IEHATLAS
566528441	IEBISAM
566528442	IEBDG
566528443	IEBCOMPR
566528444	IEBIMAGE
566528445	SGIEH402
566528446	IEBCOPY
566528447	IEBGENER
566528448	IEBUPDTE
566528449	IEBEDIT
566528450	Offline 3800 Utility
566528451	VSAM Open/Close/EOV
566528452	VSAM Record Management
566528460	DFP Common Services
566528461	ISMF
566528463	Device Console Service

4.0 Program and Service Level Information

4.1 Service Levels

Service up to and including the following program update tape (service level) is included in this product:

Release	FMID	Service Level
MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0	HDP2230	8704
MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0	JDP2325	8704

5.0 Requirements and Considerations

5.1 Installing System Requirements

5.1.1 Operating System

An MVS/370 DFP, OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8, or MVS/Extended Architecture system can be used to install MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0.

5.1.2 Hardware Requirements

There are no hardware requirements for the installing system.

5.1.3 Software Requirements for the System Used to Install HDP2230 and JDP2325

The following products are required to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 and subsequent maintenance. These products should be part of the installing system before beginning installation of the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

- System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E) (5665-949) Release 2 with PTF UR08934, SMP/E Release 3 (until January 31, 1988), or System Modification Program Release 4 (SMP4) with PTF UR08050. Later releases and modifications of SMP/E may be used unless otherwise announced by IBM.

  Note:

  1. For SMP/E Release 4 users the GROUPEXTEND operand examines more SYSMODs than it does when GROUP is specified. By specifying the GROUPEXTEND operand instead of GROUP, SMP/E Release 4 will automatically include SYSMODs that supersede those requiste SYSMODs that are not available or are being held for error. The GROUPEXTEND operand requires additional processing, could cause the command to run longer, and may require a larger region size. However, GROUPEXTEND reduces the amount of time you would otherwise spend searching for missing requisites.

- The Assembler H Version 2 licensed program (5668-962) is required for the assembly during stage I of the SYSGEN.

  Note:

  1. Unless certain steps are taken, the OPEN, CLOSE, and EOV macros require the use of Assembler H Version 2 and the expansions cannot be executed on MVS/370. Downward compatible expansions can be caused as described in the SPLEVEL macro information in: MVS/Extended Architecture Supervisor Services and Macro Instructions, MVS/Extended Architecture System Programming Library: System Modifications, and MVS/Extended Architecture System Programming Library: System Macro Facilities. This is similiar to what was described in announcement P81-170 which announced MVS/Extended Architecture.

- The linkage editor packaged with the MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 1 or Version 2, MVS/370 DFP Version 1, or MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is required for the installation and maintenance of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

Notes:

1. If you are installing MVS/Extended Architecture DFP for the first time and do not have an operating system environment with MVS/370 DFP installed, the linkage editor must be taken from the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 product tape and must be installed prior to the ACCEPT step of any MVS/XA products to be installed. See "SMP4: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor" on page 34 or "SMP/E: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor" on page 56 for further information.
2. Without the specified releases of the assembler and linkage editor, you will not be able to complete a SYSGEN successfully. The specified releases support the new parameters and operation codes required to build and execute an MVS/XA system.

- Device Support Facilities (any release of Device Support Facilities that is compatible with your installing system) is required to write the IPL text. The specific release depends on your requirements, including the devices on the system. Remember, however, that the MVS/Extended Architecture version of Device Support Facilities Release 6 or higher (5655-257) is the only version supported in the MVS/XA environment.

5.1.4 Storage Requirements

Refer to the tables contained in each install scenario for the SMP storage requirements.

5.2 Target System Requirements

5.2.1 Operating System

MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0 requires the following:

1. MVS/System Product - JES2 Version 2 Release 2.0 (5740-XC6) or,
2. MVS/System Product - JES3 Version 2 Release 2.1 (5665-291).

   Note: JES2 also requires APAR OZ97198.

and their prerequisites for execution, and their distribution libraries for system generation. Subsequent releases and modifications may be used unless otherwise announced by IBM.

MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0

- MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0 requires one of the following as an installation base.
  1. OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 (5752-VS2)
  2. MVS/370 DFP (5665-295)
  3. MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 1 or Version 2

5.2.2 Hardware Requirements

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is designed to operate only on IBM processors executing in Extended Architecture mode.

All users with device type 3480, and are installing PTFs: UY02169 or UY06705 for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 and related SP2.2.0 PTF UY90007, must install device type microcode EC991857 and patch 12-57008.

All users with device type 4245 or 4248 and running in native mode, should refer to the following APARs before using the printers: II02221, II02468, II02481, and OZ52861. These APARs will explain the new printers and their differences.

5.3 *Toleration PTFs*

This release of MVS/Extended Architecture DFP introduces a number of data forms that are incompatible with prior releases. PTFs have been generated for the following products/releases which provide toleration to these changes. These PTFs MUST be installed to the indicated product releases to allow successful processing of data that have been processed by this release.

Generally, the PTFs are needed when data is shared between MVS/XA DFP 2.3 and non-MVS DFP 2.3 systems, when data is moved between such systems (to allow for recovery capability), or when data is used intermittently by non-MVS/XA DFP 2.3 systems.

Product	FMID	PTF Number	APAR Number	PUT Tape	Function
MVS/370 1.1.0	HDQ1102	UZ41858	OZ88631	8507	N*512 (ICF)
		UZ84709	OZ96778	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97327	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97349	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97481	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97843	8701	Recall Enqueue
MVS/370 1.1.1	JDQ1110	UZ41859	OZ88631	8507	N*512 (ICF)
		UZ50808	OZ93747	8604	N*512 (VSAM)
			OZ94726	8604	N*512 (VSAM)
		UZ84708	OZ96778	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97327	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97349	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97481	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97843	8701	Recall Enqueue
		UZ83324	OZ97139	8607	Linear Data Sets
		UZ83343	OZ97147	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (O/C/EOV)
		UZ83345	OZ97147	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (O/C/EOV)
		UZ83346	OZ97148	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (DADSM)
		UZ83347	OZ97146	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (Catalog)
		UZ83348	OZ97146	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (Catalog)
		UZ83358	OZ97144	8607	Export of Aliases/ Data Set Expiration Beyond 1999
MVS/XA 1.1.0	HDP1102	UZ41860	OZ88632	8507	N*512 (ICF)
		UZ84707	OZ96377	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ96872	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97226	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97330	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97841	8701	Recall Enqueue
MVS/XA 1.1.2	JDP1111	UZ41861	OZ88632	8507	N*512 (ICF)
		UZ50809	OZ93780	8604	N*512 (VSAM)
			OZ94727	8604	N*512 (VSAM)
		UZ84706	OZ96377	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ96872	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97226	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97330	8701	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97841	8701	Recall Enqueue
		UZ83328	OZ97140	8607	Linear Data Sets
		UZ83329	OZ97149	8607	Export of Aliases/ Data Set Expiration Beyond 1999
		UZ83333	OZ97150	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (Catalog)
		UZ83334	OZ97150	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999

			(Catalog)
UZ83335	OZ97151	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (O/C/EOV)
UZ83336	OZ97151	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (O/C/EOV)

MVS/XA 2.1.0	HDP2210	UZ50810	OZ93781	8604	N*512 (VSAM)
			OZ94727	8604	Linear Data Sets
			OZ94728	8604	Linear Data Sets
		UZ84705	OZ96377	8609	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97226	8609	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97330	8609	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97841	8609	Recall Enqueue
		UZ83326	OZ97141	8607	Linear Data Sets
		UZ83327	OZ97143	8607	Linear Data Sets
		UZ83331	OZ97149	8607	Export of Aliases/ Data Set Expiration Beyond 1999
		UZ83338	OZ97151	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (O/C/EOV)
		UZ83339	OZ97151	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (O/C/EOV)
		UZ83340	OZ97151	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (O/C/EOV)
		UZ83341	OZ97150	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 Catalog
		UZ83342	OZ97150	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 Catalog
MVS/XA 2.2.0	JDP2220	UZ83332	OZ97149	8607	Export of Aliases/ Data Set Expiration Beyond 1999
		UZ84704	OZ96377	8609	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97226	8609	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97330	8609	Recall Enqueue
			OZ97841	8609	Recall Enqueue
		UZ83359	OZ97150	8607	Expiration Beyond 1999 (Catalog)
		UZ83436	OZ97141	8607	Linear Data Sets

The following PTFs add support for VSAM N*512 physical blocksizes.

DFDSS 1.2.0	HAE1500	UL02534	PL01940	8609	N*512 (ICF)
DFDSS 2.1.0	HAE2102	UL02594	PL01831	8609	N*512 (ICF)

The following publications are available:

- MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 2 (5665-XA2) Releases 1.0 and 2.0

  MVS/Extended Architecture Expiration Dates Beyond 1999 APAR Numbers OZ97150, OZ97151 GC26-4295

  MVS/Extended Architecture: Linear Data Sets APAR Numbers OZ97141, OZ97143 GC26-4298

- MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 1 (5665-284) Releases 1.2

  MVS/Extended Architecture Expiration Dates Beyond 1999 APAR Numbers OZ97150, OZ97151 GC26-4296

  MVS/Extended Architecture Linear Data Sets APAR Number OZ97140, GC26-4299

- MVS/370 DFP Version 1 (5665-284) Releases 1.2

  MVS/370: Expiration Dates Beyond 1999 APAR Numbers 0Z97146, OZ97147, OZ97148 GC26-4297

  MVS/370 Linear Data Sets APAR Number OZ97139, GC26-4300

5.4 *Software Considerations*

The following items may be applicable to your installation and each should be considered as you plan the installation of this program product:

MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0

- In some prior releases it was optional whether UCS and FCB modules in SYS1.IMAGELIB were marked reentrant and refreshable. It is no longer is optional. As shown in System-Data Administration, you must include RENT and REFR in the PARM specification when you link edit UCS or FCB modules. You need not take any action concerning IBM supplied modules. IBM supplied UCS and FCB modules and FCB modules created by IEBIMAGE are marked reentrant and refreshable. In this paragraph the term 'UCS module' includes UCS image table modules as created by the IGGUCSIT macro.
- The OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8, MVS/370 DFP or MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 1 or Version 2 distribution libraries and SMP data sets must be used as a base to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. A copy of the DLIBs and SMP data sets should be used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0
- Following the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 and MVS/SP 2.2.0, you **cannot** use the resulting MVS/XA distribution libraries for building or maintaining a non-MVS/XA system.
- Refer to "Appendix B. Summary of Deletions" on page 109, for a list of DFP or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 components, modules, and FMIDs deleted.
- Object and load modules acceptable to the OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8, MVS/370 DFP, or MVS/XA DFP V1 or V2 (any release) linkage editors and loaders are also acceptable to the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor and the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 loader.
- Users of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that are running linkedit jobs may need to increase their space allocation for SYSUT1. Without an increase, users may get ABENDB37, MSGIEC030 RC4 when executing linkedits.
- Version 3 VTAM 3.1.1 (FMID = HVT3113) users need to install APAR OY01953 if product install requires a generation (SYSGEN or I/O GEN). This fix is only for the Version 3 level of the VTAM modules.
- For user-replaceable modules (for example, IDATMSTP, IGGPRE00, IGG026DU, IGG029DU, IGG030DU, IFG0EX0A, and others) you must refer to: MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 2: Customization, GC26-4267, for additional details.

MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.2.0

- For information on making ISMF available to TSO users and how to set up the execution environment, refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.1.0

- Overlay load modules which have not been processed to add segment text block counts (see MVS/Extended Architecture Linkage Editor and Loader User's Guide) may experience a load time performance loss in the XA environment. The segment text block counts may be added to overlay load modules by: link-editing using the MVS/XA DFP

linkage editor, or by altering using the MVS/XA DFP IEBCOPY utility ALTERMOD (to alter in place) or COPYMOD (to copy, reblock, and alter) operations.

- Erase-On-Scratch can be requested in the DADSM scratch parameter list. If you have RACF 1.7 installed, you can also control Erase-on-Scratch using RACF installation options and data set profiles.

- The MVS/XA DFP linkage editors are no longer overlay structures and therefore require 32K bytes more virtual storage than does the OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 linkage editor. **The MVS/XA DFP linkage editor may require an increased region size in order to produce 32760 byte output blocks.** This requirement reflects the increase of the default linkage editor SIZE parameter to (384K,96K) in support of 32760 byte output blocks.

- Those installations which have replaced the DADSM pre-processing and/or post-processing exits (IGGPRE00 and IGGPOST0), should review their exit code for its proper use of the DADSM function code (IEXFUNC) of X'06' and the associated changes to IEXPTR1 and IEXPTR2. See the chapter on Exit Routines within MVS/Extended Architecture System-Data Administration, GA26-4149.

- If you have installed installation exits for functions which are now part of MVS/Extended Architecture DFP, they may have to be modified and reinstalled. For information, refer to MVS/Extended Architecture System-Data Administration, GC26-4149, or on a specific user exit refer to the diagnostic information for the particular component. For example, for information on a DADSM user exit, see DADSM Diagnosis Reference, LY26-3961.

- Using multiple buffers for IEBGENER increases the amount of virtual storage needed to run the program. A region parameter may be needed or changed for additional storage to avoid system ABEND80A. The region size can be calculated by using the following formula:

  50K + ((2+SYSUT1 DCBBUFNO))*((SYSUT1 DCBBLKSIZE))

  + ((2+SYSUT2 DCBBUFNO))*((SYSUT2 DCBBLKSIZE))

MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 1

- To users of VTAM: VSAM module IDA019C1 has been recompiled against ACF/VTAM Version 2 Release 1 macros and control blocks. The access method control block (ACB) for ACF/VTAM Version 2 Release 1 has been increased in length by 16 bytes. If the GENCB control block manipulation macro is issued by a VTAM application program using a length value for the ACB which was not obtained by the SHOWCB macro, the application program may need to be updated. This update can be accomplished either by adding 16 bytes to the length value or by obtaining the length value for the ACB by use of the SHOWCB macro.

- The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 IEBCOPY utility requires 24Kbytes more virtual storage than was used by the MVS/370 DFP Version 1 or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 IEBCOPY utility.

- Device Support Facilities Release 1 through 5 will be deleted during the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. Neither the MVS/370 version (5752-VS2) nor the MVS/XA version (5655-257) of Device Support Facilities Release 6 or higher will be deleted during the install process. (Installation of the MVS/XA version of Device Support Facilities Release 6 or higher replaces the MVS/370 version of Device Support Facilities Release 6 or higher.) If the MVS/XA version of Device Support Facilities Release 6 or higher (5655-257) has been accepted, it will be SYSGENed along with the other products during MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation.

- The Direct Access Storage Device Migration Aid licensed program (5668-002), at its most current level, will execute in an MVS/XA environment to assist in moving data from supported direct access storage devices to the IBM 3375 or the IBM 3380 Direct Access Storage devices.

- Both indexed and nonindexed VTOCs are supported by MVS/XA DFP. The support is functionally equivalent to the support provided with MVS/370 DFP Version 1 (5665-295), MVS/XA DFP Version 1 (5665-284), or Version 2 (5665-XA2), and Data Facility Device Support (DFDS) program product (5740-AM7).

  If BUFNO is not specified, use a value of 5 in the calculation. This formula yields a slightly larger value for region size to allow for growth and different MVS environments.

- Load modules built by the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor are acceptable as input to the OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 linkage editor, but the AMODE/RMODE/RSECT parameters are ignored as input. The OS/VS2 MVS linkage editor does not provide AMODE/RMODE/RSECT information as output. Load modules built by the OS/VS2 MVS linkage editor are acceptable as input to the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor, which applies default values for the new attributes. See MVS/Extended Architecture Data Facility Product: General Information, GA26-4142 for definitions of AMODE, RMODE, and RSECT.

5.5 Optional Licensed Program Products

The following items are required to implement optional licensed programs with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

- Support for Information Management System (IMS) requires the following APARs:
  - For 1.2.0, 1.3.0 - PP57219, PP57654
  - For 2.1.0 - PP56978, PP57654

    Note: IMS will not run with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 without these APARs.
  - PL05070 - VAT Pointer changed with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

    HIM1200 UL05646

    HIM1304 UL05647

    HIM2102 UL05649
  - MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 fix: UY07473/OY02012
  - Users of HIM1200, HIM1304, or HMH2102 need APAR PP55225 installed. Otherwise, ABEND0C4 will occur in IMS.
  - PL05909 - DBRC ABEND0C4 During close process. Users DCB pointer in DEB changed with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

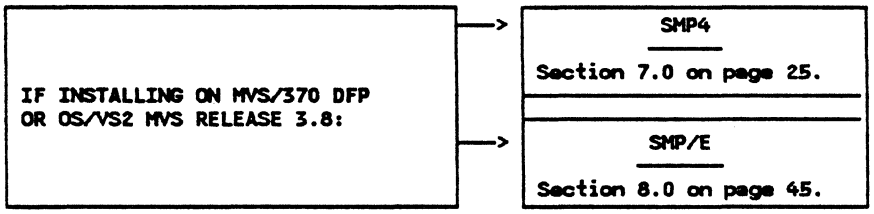
    JMH2150 UL05707

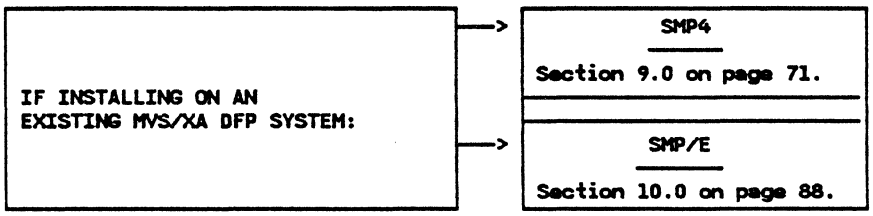
    For IMS 1.2 and 1.3, see open APARs: PP57508 and PP58177.
- The new Integrated Catalog Facility, catalog lock facility, and ISMF require the authorization functions provided by Resource Access Control Facility (RACF) (5740-XXH) Release 7.
- Support for expiration date beyond 1999, data in virtual, and ISMF requires the functions provided by DFDSS 2.3.0.
- For implementation of expiration date beyond than 1999, APAR OY00707 is required for JES3.

- Support for N*512 requires the functions provided by DFDSS 2.2.0.
- If you wish to use DFHSM you require the following:
  - DFHSM 2.2.0 with PTF UY08891 (or higher) and APAR OY06357.
  - **OR**
  - Users with DFHSM 2.2.1 require APAR OZ95832 installed. Otherwise ABEND0A0 will occur during IPL.
- The VSAM 31-bit control block enhancement requires the functions provided in DFHSM 2.2.0 or 2.2.1 with the PTF UY08891.
- Support for ISMF requires the functions provided by:
  - Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF) Version 2 Release 2 (5665-319)
  - Interactive System Productivity Facility/ Program Development Facility (ISPF/PDF) (5665-317) Version 2 Release 2 is required to use BROWSE and EDIT.
  - Resource Access Control Facility (RACF) (5740-XXH) may be used to provide access authorization for ISMF and other MVS/XA DFP functions. For authorization of ISMF applications, commands, and line operators, RACF Version 1 Release 7, or higher, is required.
  - Users of the Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS) (5665-327) facilities through the interactive storage management facility are required to be on DFDSS Version 2 Release 3 for volume application support.
  - Users of the Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS) (5665-327) facilities through the interactive storage management facility are required to be on DFDSS Version 2 Release 2 for data set application support.
  - Users of the Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM) (5665-329) facilities through the interactive storage management facility are required to be on DFHSM Version 2 Release 2.1 for DFHSM data set application support.
  - Time Sharing Option Extensions (TSO/E) Version 1 Release 3 (5665-285) or subsequent release.
- The support for the IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem Model 3 in all-points-addressable mode requires the functions provided by Print Services Facility (5665-275).
- Support for IBM 3380 Direct Access Storage Models AD4, BD4, AE4, and BE4 requires the functions provided by Device Support Facilities (ICKDSF) Release 7 (5655-257) with PTF UZ90326 and the functions provided by the Environmental Recording Editing and Printing (EREP) Version 3 Release 1 Feature 2 program product (5658-260).

6.0 Installation Procedures

This section is provided to point to the correct set of detailed installation instructions that are needed to install MVS/XA DFP Version 2.3.0. The set of instructions to be used is determined by the version of SMP that is being used (SMP4 or SMP/E) and the installation base. Before installing MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, check the Preventive Service Planning (PSP) Facility for updates to the information and procedures in this program directory. Refer to "Preventive Service Planning (PSP) Facility" on page 9.





The following section is for the user

INSTALLING ONTO

MVS/370 DFP OR OS/VS2

MVS RELEASE 3.8

USING SMP4

7.0 SMP4: SYSGEN onto MVS/370 DFP or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8

SMP4: SYSGEN of MVS/370 DFP or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 Installation Steps

The following section assumes MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is being installed on OS/VS2 Release 3.8 or MVS/370 DFP V1 DLIBs using SMP4. A full SYSGEN is required for this installation.

Refer to System Modification Program (SMP) System Programmer's Guide for information regarding the use of SMP.

In the installation steps that follow, it is assumed that the installation will take place on copies of existing DLIBs and SMP4 data sets.

SMP4: Installation Procedure Overview

During the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, the SMP ACCEPT step will require a significant amount of time and DASD space.

To help avoid reruns and to provide recovery capability, you should:

- Ensure that all required data sets are defined in the SMP4 procedure.
- Carefully analyze the DASD space requirements of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 and MVS/SP 2.2.0.
- Use copies of the SMP and DLIB data sets.

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 includes some functions (see "Appendix B. Summary of Deletions" on page 109) that were formerly installed under several FMIDs; these previously installed FMIDs should be deleted before MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is installed. The FMIDs may be deleted during the installation process by installing the function DELDFP2 as described in "SMP4: RECEIVE, and ACCEPT NOAPPLY Function DELDFP2" on page 37.

The following steps are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 using SMP Release 4. Each step is discussed in detail in later sections.

1. Review distribution library data set requirements. See "SMP4: Distribution Libraries" on page 28
2. Review system data set requirements. Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148
3. Review SMP4 data set requirements. *See "SMP4: Data Sets" on page 30*
4. Update the SMP4 procedure in your system SYS1.PROCLIB. *See "SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 30*
5. Update the SMPPTS system entry. *See "SMP4: Update the SMPPTS System Entry" on page 33*
6. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230 and JDP2325) into temporary libraries (SMPTLIBs). *See "SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)" on page 33*
7. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP4: RECEIVE the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 34*
8. Link-edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor from SMPTLIB into an authorized load library. *See "SMP4: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor" on page 34*
9. Update PTS system entry in SMPPTS. *See "SMP4: Update PTS System Entry in SMPPTS" on page 37*

10. RECEIVE and ACCEPT NOAPPLY the function DELDFP2 to delete from the DLIBs the modules and macros that will be replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP4: RECEIVE, and ACCEPT NOAPPLY Function DELDFP2" on page 37*

11. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Cleanup jobs considerations in the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

12. RECEIVE, ACCEPT NOAPPLY function to delete IPCS. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

13. RECEIVE MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

14. ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP4: ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 38*

15. ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/SP 2.2.0" on page 39*

16. ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

17. ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 39*

    Note: Ensure that all products and service required for the SYSGEN have been ACCEPTed successfully before proceeding to the next step.

18. Initialize the new system residence volume with IPL text. *See "SMP4: Initialize New System Residence Volume" on page 40*

19. Execute a Stage I sysgen. *See "SMP4: System Generation" on page 40*

20. Update LINKS PROC. *See "SMP4: System Generation" on page 40*

21. Execute a Stage II sysgen. *See "SMP4: System Generation" on page 40*

22. Copy SMPACDS to SMPCDS and copy SMPACRQ to SMPCRQ. *See "SMP4: Copy SMPACDS and SMPACRQ Data Sets" on page 41*

23. Execute JCLIN using stage I output to update SMPCDS. *See "SMP4: Update SMPCDS with JCLIN" on page 41*

24. Execute REJECT to delete temporary data sets. *See "SMP4: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from SMPPTS and SMPTLIB" on page 41*

25. REJECT MVS/XA PTFs, if any. *See "SMP4: REJECT PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 42*

26. Execute SMPPTS cleanup to delete FMIDs from the SMPPTS system member. *See "SMP4: SMPPTS Cleanup" on page 42*

27. Execute the MVS configuration program (MVSCP) to define the I/O configuration. *See "SMP4: Execute the MVS Configuration Program." on page 42*

28. If you have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, install library character sets, graphic character modification modules, and character arrangement tables.

29. Install JES2, if applicable. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

30. Update SYS1.PROCLIB and SYS1.PARMLIB, as required, to conform to the installation specifications. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

31. IPL the MVS/XA system. *See "SMP4: IPL the MVS/XA System" on page 43*

32. Initialize the stand-alone dump program. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

33. Make ISMF available to the TSO user. Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

34. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP). Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for instructions on executing the IVP associated with that product.

7.1 *SMP4: Distribution Libraries*

The following table contains a list of the distribution libraries required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The space allocation is an estimate of the **additional** tracks and directory blocks required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 when COMPRESS is specified for SMP accept processing. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 DFP estimates must be added to those of other products being accepted that have modules in the same DLIBs.

Estimated Additional DASD Space

Data Set Name	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	Tracks 3350	Tracks 3380	Dir Block
SYS1.ACMDLIB	6144	0	0	5	6
SYS1.ADGTLLIB	6144	150	104	44	47
SYS1.ADGTMLIB	3120	25	17	5	4
SYS1.ADGTPLIB	3120	371	259	58	31
SYS1.ADGTTLIB	3120	19	13	1	1
SYS1.AGENLIB	1680	55	39	28	7
SYS1.AHELP	1680	19	14	9	4
SYS1.AIMAGE	12960	2614	1798	625	14
SYS1.ALINKLIB	6144	3	2	3	2
SYS1.ALPALIB	6144	3	2	2	2
SYS1.AMACLIB	1680	119	85	92	13
SYS1.AMODGEN	1680	172	122	44	4
SYS1.ANUCLEUS	6144	172	122	3	3
SYS1.AOSA0	6144	23	16	56	46
SYS1.AOSA1	6144	0	0	1	1
SYS1.AOSB3	6144	0	0	2	1
SYS1.AOSCA	6144	3	2	2	1
SYS1.AOSC2	6144	0	0	1	1
SYS1.AOSC5	6144	27	18	11	11
SYS1.AOSC6	6144	3	2	8	7
SYS1.AOSD0	6144	10	7	76	101
SYS1.AOSD7	6144	0	0	6	7
SYS1.AOSD8	6144	23	16	16	20
SYS1.AOSU0	6144	0	0	77	47
SYS1.AOS04	6144	0	0	6	4
SYS1.AOS05	6144	0	0	2	2
SYS1.AOS12	6144	0	0	4	4
SYS1.APROCLIB	800	0	0	1	2
SYS1.ASAMPLIB	1680	11	8	11	2
SYS1.ATSOMAC	1680	0	0	4	2
SYS1.CIPLIB	6144	20	14	6	6

7.1.1 SMP4: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.AIMAGE

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires distribution library SYS1.AIMAGE, which is new unless MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 1, MVS/370 DFP or IBM 3800 Model 1 Enhancements were previously installed. Since the space requirements for SYS1.AIMAGE are very large, you may choose to scratch and reallocate SYS1.AIMAGE before installing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 tape.

SYS1.AIMAGE requires LRECL=80 and RECFM=FB for the allocation. Since all members are large, the most efficient blocksize for DASD utilization is the largest multiple of 80 that will fit on the track and still be handled by the access methods; i.e., be less than 32760. On the 3375 and 3380, the most efficient blocksize for space utilization is two blocks per track (i.e., blocksize of 23440).

7.1.2 SMP4: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.CIPLIB

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires distribution library SYS1.CIPLIB, which is new unless MVS/Extended Architecture DFP Version 1, MVS/370 DFP or the Offline IBM 3800 Utility Program (5748-UT2) was previously installed. This library will contain all modules and graphics for the utility that supports the offline IBM 3800 Model 1 and should be allocated as a PDS with BLKSIZE = 6144 and RECFM = U.

7.1.3 SMP4: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.ANUCLEUS

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires a new distribution library. This library should be allocated as a PDS with BLKSIZE = 6144 and RECFM = U.

7.1.4 SMP4: Considerations when Allocating ISMF Data Sets

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four distribution libraries for ISMF The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the DLIBs that you need to allocate, including record format, logical record length, block size, total space required, and the number of PDS directory blocks required. You may want to allocate more space than shown to allow room for future expansion.

Execution Data Set Name	RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	Tracks 3350	Tracks 3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.ADGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	44	47
SYS1.ADGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	5	4
SYS1.ADGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	58	31
SYS1.ADGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	1	1

7.2 SMP4: Target Libraries

The system libraries can be defined either during SYSGEN, via the DATASET macro, or prior to the system generation, via the JCL and/or access method services. Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148.

7.2.1 SMP4: ISMF Target Libraries

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four target libraries for ISMF. The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the target libraries that you need to allocate. This includes record format, logical record length, block size, total space required (shown both as number of blocks and equivalent number of 3380 tracks), and the number of partitioned data set directory blocks required.

Execution Data Set Name	RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	Tracks 3350	Tracks 3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.DGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	34	26
SYS1.DGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	8	4
SYS1.DGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	115	31
SYS1.DGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	2	1

7.3 SMP4: Data Sets

A full complement of SMP4 data sets are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

The SMPACDS data set may need to be enlarged to accommodate MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation requirements. The data set can be enlarged by copying it to a new, larger data set. During the copy operation, any unusable space from previous updating will be recovered.

The following table provides an estimate of the additional tracks and directory blocks needed in the SMP4 data sets by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. These estimates must be added to those of any other products being installed to get the total additional space requirement.

Estimated Additional DASD Space

Data Set Name	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	Tracks 3350	Tracks 3380	Dir Block
SMPACDS	12960	418	288	120	272
SMPACRQ	1680	0	0	0	0
SMPPTS	12960	3	2	1	1
SMPWRK1	3360	937	654	300	150
SMPWRK2	3360	937	654	300	150
SMPWRK3	3200	930	650	300	150
SMPWRK4	3200	930	650	300	150
SMPWRK5	6144	999	691	300	500
SYSUT1	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT2	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT3	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT4	-	234	163	75	-
SMPTLIB Files					
HDP2230.F1	6400	67	46	25	4
HDP2230.F2	6400	3034	2098	912	38
HDP2230.F3	6144	1069	740	328	309
JDP2325.F1	6400	217	150	78	35

Note: The installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires a significant amount of space in the SMP data sets. Therefore, ***prior to starting (or restarting) any installation step***, you should perform a space analysis ***and*** ensure that sufficient space is available in the SMP data sets.

The SMPTLIB data sets are allocated by the receive process. Ensure that there is sufficient space available to allocate all SMPTLIB data sets on a single volume. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 estimates must be added to those of any other products being installed to get the total additional space requirement.

7.4 SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB

The following is an example of the JCL job stream that will update SYS1.PROCLIB with a SMP procedure. Before using this sample procedure, modify it to fit your system's requirements. This SMP procedure is used in subsequent installation steps.

This SMP procedure is for SMP Accept processing, therefore it does not include DD statements for target libraries.

```
//SMPJOB   < Job Card Parameters >
//         EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
```

```
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN DD DATA
./  ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//* SAMPLE PROCEDURE CONTAINING JCL TO INSTALL MVS/XA DFP *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPJOB   PROC
//SMP      EXEC PGM=HMASMP,REGION=4096K,PARM='DATE=U'
//STEPLIB  DD DSN=USERLOAD,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  SMP SYSOUT DATA SETS
//*
//SMPLIST  DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPOUT   DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPRPT   DD SYSOUT=A
//*
//*  UTILITY WORK FILES FOR SMP4
//*
//SYSUT1   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT2   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT3   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT4   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//*
//*  REQUIRED SMP4 WORK FILES
//*
//SMPWRK1  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK2  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK3  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK4  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK5  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,500)),
//         DCB=(RECFM=U,BLKSIZE=6144)
//*
//*  DISTRIBUTION LIBRARIES (DLIBS)
//*
//ABLSCLIO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSCLIO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSKELO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSKELO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSMSGO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSMSGO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSPNLO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSPNLO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSTBLO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSTBLO,DISP=SHR
//ACMDLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.ACMDLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTLLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTLLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTMLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTMLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTPLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTPLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTTLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTTLIB,DISP=SHR
//AGENLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.AGENLIB,DISP=SHR
//AHELP    DD DSN=SYS1.AHELP,DISP=SHR
//AIMAGE   DD DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE,DISP=SHR
//AJES3MAC DD DSN=SYS1.AJES3MAC,DISP=SHR
//AJES3SRC DD DSN=SYS1.AJES3SRC,DISP=SHR
//ALINKLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ALINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//ALPALIB  DD DSN=SYS1.ALPALIB,DISP=SHR
//AMACLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.AMACLIB,DISP=SHR
//AMODGEN  DD DSN=SYS1.AMODGEN,DISP=SHR
//ANUCLEUS DD DSN=SYS1.ANUCLEUS,DISP=SHR
//AOSA0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSA0,DISP=SHR
//AOSA1    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSA1,DISP=SHR
//AOSBA    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSBA,DISP=SHR
//AOSBN    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSBN,DISP=SHR
//AOSB0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSB0,DISP=SHR
//AOSB3    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSB3,DISP=SHR
//AOSCA    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCA,DISP=SHR
//AOSCD    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCD,DISP=SHR
```

```
//AOSCE     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCE,DISP=SHR
//AOSC2     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC2,DISP=SHR
//AOSC5     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC5,DISP=SHR
//AOSC6     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC6,DISP=SHR
//AOSD0     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD0,DISP=SHR
//AOSD7     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD7,DISP=SHR
//AOSD8     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD8,DISP=SHR
//AOSG0     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSG0,DISP=SHR
//AOSH3     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSH3,DISP=SHR
//AOST4     DD DSN=SYS1.AOST4,DISP=SHR
//AOSU0     DD DSN=SYS1.AOSU0,DISP=SHR
//AOS00     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS00,DISP=SHR
//AOS04     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS04,DISP=SHR
//AOS05     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS05,DISP=SHR
//AOS06     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS06,DISP=SHR
//AOS11     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS11,DISP=SHR
//AOS12     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS12,DISP=SHR
//AOS29     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS29,DISP=SHR
//AOS32     DD DSN=SYS1.AOS32,DISP=SHR
//APARMLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.APARMLIB,DISP=SHR
//APROCLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.APROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//ASAMPLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.ASAMPLIB,DISP=SHR
//ATSOMAC   DD DSN=SYS1.ATSOMAC,DISP=SHR
//AUADS     DD DSN=SYS1.AUADS,DISP=SHR
//CIPLIB    DD DSN=SYS1.CIPLIB,DISP=SHR
//DASDIST   DD DSN=SYS1.DASDIST,DISP=SHR
//DASDMACS  DD DSN=SYS1.DASDMACS,DISP=SHR
//HASPSRC   DD DSN=SYS1.HASPSRC,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  MACRO LIBRARIES FOR SMP4 INVOKED ASSEMBLIES
//*
//SYSLIB    DD DSN=SYS1.AMACLIB,DISP=SHR
//          DD DSN=SYS1.AMODGEN,DISP=SHR
//          DD DSN=SYS1.AGENLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  SMP PERMANENT DATA SETS
//*
//SMPACDS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPACDS,DISP=SHR
//SMPACRQ   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPACRQ,DISP=SHR
//SMPCDS    DD DSN=SYS1.SMPCDS,DISP=SHR
//SMPCRQ    DD DSN=SYS1.SMPCRQ,DISP=SHR
//SMPLOG    DD DSN=SYS1.SMPLOG,DISP=MOD
//SMPPTS    DD DSN=SYS1.SMPPTS,DISP=SHR
//SMPSCDS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPSCDS,DISP=SHR
//SMPSTS    DD DSN=SYS1.SMPSTS,DISP=SHR
//SMPMTS    DD DSN=SYS1.SMPMTS,DISP=SHR
./         ENDUP
/*
```

Notes:

1. A region of at least 4096K is required for the accept of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The actual amount of storage required depends on the number of SYSMODs processed.

2. A STEPLIB DD statement has been included in the procedure above. If the system used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is an MVS/370 DFP system or MVS/XA DFP system, the STEPLIB DD statement is not required. Otherwise, the linkage editor will be put into this library in a subsequent step in the installation procedure. The library must be APF authorized, and must exist prior to executing this procedure in subsequent steps. For further information on link-editing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor *See "SMP4: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor" on page 34.*

3. If the Direct Access Storage Dump Restore (DASDR) program product (5740-UT1, FMID JDS1112) is installed, then DD statements are required for ddname DASDIST and ddname DASDMACS. These DD statements are included in the sample SMP procedure. If DASDR is not installed, these DD statements should be removed from your SMP procedure.

4. Unless your installation already uses the Offline IBM 3800 Utility Program, SYS1.CIPLIB will need to be allocated.

5. SYS1.ANUCLEUS is a new library and needs to be allocated.

6. SYS1.ABLSCLI0, SYS1.ABLSKEL0, SYS1.ABLSMSG0, SYS1.ABLSPNL0, SYS1.ABLSTBL0 are new libraries and need to be allocated. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7. SYS1.ADGTLLIB, SYS1.ADGTMLIB, SYS1.ADGTPLIB, SYS1.ADGTTLIB are four new ISMF libraries that need to be allocated.

7.5 SMP4: Update the SMPPTS System Entry

The following subentries in the system entry in the SMPPTS data set must be updated before beginning step "SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)" on page 33.

```
//PTSSYS   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*           UPDATE THE SMPPTS SYSTEM ENTRY                    *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  UCLIN PTS .
            REP SYS
            DSSPACE(500,500,750)
            PEMAX(7500) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

DSSPACE - this subentry of the PTS system entry specifies the number of primary tracks, the number of secondary tracks, and the number of directory blocks that are needed for each SMPTLIB data set in order to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

7.6 SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)

The following is sample JCL to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. In this step all the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 code, organized as unloaded partitioned data sets, is loaded into SMPTLIB data sets.

```
//RCVEFCTN JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*    RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)               *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DSN=SMPMCS,DISP=(OLD,PASS),
//  VOL=SER=DP2230,UNIT=(TAPE,,DEFER),
//  LABEL=(,SL)
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  RECEIVE  S(HDP2230,JDP2325) .
/*
```

Note: Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

7.7 SMP4: RECEIVE the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to receive any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on a Cumulative Service Tape that accompanied the product tapes. Recommended service in the PSP should be received at this time. If no additional PTFs were shipped on a separate tape, skip this step.

```
//RCVEPTFS JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*            RECEIVE THE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS                *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DSN=DFPTFS,DISP=(OLD,PASS),LABEL=(,NL),
//  VOL=SER=DFPPTF,
//  UNIT=(TAPE,,DEFER),DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,
//  BLKSIZE=7200)
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  RECEIVE .
/*
```

7.8 SMP4: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor

If the system used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is an MVS/370 DFP system or MVS/XA DFP system, skip this step and continue with "SMP4: Update the SMPPTS System Entry" on page 33

This step link-edits the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor into a load library on the installing system so that it can be used in subsequent steps of the installation. The same copy of the linkage editor will also be put into SYS1.LINKLIB of the MVS/XA system during the SYSGEN.

> **Note:** It is recommended that you do **NOT** link-edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor into SYS1.LINKLIB on your installing system. No OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 maintenance will be provided for the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. However, if the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor is link-edited into the installing system's SYS1.LINKLIB, *and* the linkage editor is included in the BLDL table (as an entry in IEABLDxx in SYS1.PARMLIB), you *may* IPL after link-editing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor or include SYS1.LINKLIB in the STEPLIB DD statement in SYS1.PROCLIB. This will initialize the BLDL table with the device address (TTR) of the new copy of the linkage editor.

To allow for the additional option of using the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system while continuing to ensure its maintenance on an MVS/XA system, the load library into which the linkage editor is link-edited may be made a second permanent target library known to SMP on the MVS/XA system.

1. The JCL to link-edit the linkage editor exists in the SMPTLIB data set (member name LKEDJCL) as part of a procedure (procedure name DFPLKED), and includes the JCL to put the procedure in SYS1.PROCLIB. Also included are the linkage editor SYSLIN input records, which are put in SYS1.PARMLIB as member LKEDCNTL.

   Use the following sample JCL to punch member LKEDJCL from the SMPTLIB data set to the internal reader:

```
//GENER   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//LST     EXEC  PGM=IEBGENER
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*            OBTAIN LKEDJCL JOB FROM SMPTLIB                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=prefix.HDP2230.F2(LKEDJCL),
//  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SYSUT2   DD  SYSOUT=(A,INTRDR)
//SYSIN    DD  DUMMY
/*
```

Notes:

a. Replace prefix with the same value that is used for the DSPREFIX entry in the SMPPTS system entry.

b. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial for the SMPTLIB data sets in "SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)".

2. Job LKEDJCL uses IEBUPDTE to:

   - Write procedure DFPLKED to SYS1.PROCLIB. (The DFPLKED procedure is used to link-edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor.)
   - Write the SYSLIN input records for procedure DFPLKED to SYS1.PARMLIB (member LKEDCNTL).

```
//LKEDJCL  JOB   MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//STEP1    EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD    SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD    DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD    DATA,DLM=ZZ
./ ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=DFPLKED
//DFPLKED  PROC  OUTLIB=USERLOAD,PREFIX='',
//               FMID=HDP2230,TUNIT=SYSDA,VOLSER=XAVOL
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*       LINK-EDIT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 LINKAGE EDITOR             *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//LKED     EXEC  PGM=HEWL,PARM='LET,LIST,XREF,NCAL'
//SYSPRINT DD    SYSOUT=A
//SYSLMOD  DD    DSN=&OUTLIB,DISP=SHR
//TLIB     DD    DSN=&PREFIX&FMID..F3,DISP=SHR,
//  UNIT=&TUNIT,VOL=SER=DP1102
//SYSUT1   DD    UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=NEW,SPACE=(CYL,(3,1))
//SYSLIN   DD    DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB(LKEDCNTL),DISP=SHR
ZZ
//STEP2    EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD    SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD    DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD    DATA,DLM=ZZ
./ ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=LKEDCNTL
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFROU,HEWLFAPT,HEWLFINT,HEWLFOPT)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFINP,HEWLFESD,HEWLFEND,HEWLFSYM)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFRCG,HEWLFSCN,HEWLFRAT,HEWLFIDR)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFINC,HEWLFMAP,HEWLFADA,HEWLFENT)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFENS,HEWLFOUT,HEWLFREL,HEWLFSCD)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFFNL,HEWLFBTP,HEWLFDEF)
       ENTRY HEWLFROU
       ALIAS IEWL
       ALIAS IEWLF440
       ALIAS IEWLF880
       ALIAS IEWLF128
       ALIAS HEWL
       ALIAS LINKEDIT
       ALIAS HEWLF064
       NAME HEWLH096(R)
ZZ
```

3. The SYSLMOD data set and the SMPTLIB data set qualifiers and location must be specified by the operator when the procedure is started. The SYSLMOD data set must be cataloged. If you specified a value for DSPREFIX, you must use the same value for parameter PREFIX in this step. The FMID defaults to HDP2230. VOLSER identifies the volume serial, and

TUNIT identifies the device type on which the SMPTLIBs are located; both must be specified if the defaults are not valid for your system.

4. Following is an example of how to start the procedure to link-edit the linkage editor:

   S DFPLKED,PREFIX='DF.',VOLSER=TEMPLB,TUNIT='3330-1'

   In the example above, the modules which make up the linkage editor are taken from a data set named DF.HDP2230.F3 on volume TEMPLB and are link-edited into a cataloged load library named USERLOAD (the default), which resides on a 3330-1 volume. Ensure that the PREFIX is entered in upper case, enclosed in apostrophes. All parameters containing special characters (for example, 3330-1) must be enclosed in apostrophes.

5. Update the entry in the SMPPTS data set. Subentry LKEDNAME must be updated with the name of the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. This job should not be run until the linkage editor has been put into the new load library.

Assign the name HEWLH096 to ensure that the correct linkage editor is loaded and used during the installation process. (Previously used linkage editor names and aliases are valid as aliases for HEWLH096 *after* the MVS/XA system has been installed, but do not guarantee that the correct version of the linkage editor will be loaded during the installation process.)

Some users may choose to prepare for MVS/XA by link-editing certain load modules on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system before copying them to their MVS/XA system. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor can be executed on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system, yet continue to be owned and maintained by an MVS/XA system. This is accomplished by allocating the load library containing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor on shared DASD. Jobs executing on OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 may access this load library using a STEPLIB DD statement.

If you identify to SMP this second load library, SMP will maintain the linkage editor in this library as well as in SYS1.LINKLIB. Using the example below, run a job to assign a second target library to the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. (This example assumes the assignment of the same load library as that substituted for USERLOAD throughout the installation process.)

```
//CDSUCL   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*     UPDATE CDS TO ASSIGN SECOND TARGET LIBRARY              *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  UCLIN CDS .
  ADD LMOD(HEWLH096) SYSLIB(USERLOAD) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Note: The SYSLIB entry in the UCLIN job stream specifies the *ddname* in the SMP procedure on the DD statement which identifies the target library, not the data set name itself. However, the ddname and the data set name are frequently the same, as shown in the example below.

Subsequent maintenance against the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor, using SMP APPLY, will require that this second load library be identified in the SMP procedure. Add a DD statement (whose ddname is the same as that specified for the SYSLIB option) to your SMP procedure. For example:

//USERLOAD DD DSN=USERLOAD,DISP=SHR

Since MVS/SP 2.2.0 has a similar option for executing some of its programs on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system, it may be convenient to put all the programs in the same load library. See MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for a discussion of its migration job stream.

7.9 SMP4: Update PTS System Entry in SMPPTS

The sample JCL below updates the LKEDNAME field in member SYSTEM. The job executes the SMP procedure created in "SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 30.

```
//PTSSYS   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          UPDATE PTS SYSTEM ENTRY IN SMPPTS                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  UCLIN PTS .
          REP SYS LKEDNAME(HEWLH096)
          LKEDRC(8)
          LKEDPARM(LIST,LET,SIZE=(1526K,96K),NCAL,XREF) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Notes:

1. LKEDNAME - indicates the name of the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. **This job should not be run until the linkage editor has been put into the new load library if a non-MVS/370 DFP system is used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0**, since SMP4 will verify its existence during accept or receive processing. Assign the name HEWLH096 to ensure that the MVS/XA or MVS/370 DFP linkage editor is loaded and used during the installation process.

2. Previously used linkage editor names and aliases are valid as aliases for HEWLH096 *after* the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 system has been installed, but do not guarantee that the correct version of the linkage editor will be loaded during the installation process.

7.10 SMP4: RECEIVE, and ACCEPT NOAPPLY Function DELDFP2

The following is sample JCL to delete functions replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. During processing, the functions deleted by DELDFP2 (and all dependent functions) will be removed from the SMPACDS data set and their modules and macros will be deleted from the distribution libraries.

This job can be obtained from the SMPTLIBs as member DFPCLN08 of the partitioned data set prefix.HDP2230.F2 which is created during the recieve process of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The high level qualifier of this data set name depends on the DSPREFIX value, if any, specified in the SMPPTS SYSTEM entry. Run this job after modifying it to meet your system's requirements.

```
//DFPCLN08 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE FUNCTIONS REPLACED BY
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, AND SHOULD BE RUN BEFORE IT IS ACCEPTED.
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP4 USER WHO IS INSTALLING
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 ONTO MVS/370 DFP OR OS/VS2 MVS RELEASE 3.8
//* DLIBS PRIOR TO DOING A FULL SYSGEN. THIS JOB ASSUMES A
//* PROCEDURE NAMED "SMP4" EXISTS WITH ALL THE NECESSARY DATA
//* DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED.
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP1   EXEC SMP4
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)
```

```
   DELETE(EDM1102,EDS1102,EPM1102,EST1102,EUT1102,FDM1133,FDS1122,
          FDS1133,FDS1143,FDS1243,FDS1443,FDS1543,FUT1133,HDP1102,
          HDP2210,HDQ1102,JDM1112,JDM1113,JDM1116,JDM1122,JDM1132,
          JDM1134,JDM1136,JDM1137,JDM1138,JDM1139,JDM1141,JDM1142,
          JDM1145,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222,
          JDQ1110,JDS1112,JDS1125,JDS1134,JDS1136,JDS1137,JDS1139,
          JDS1140,JDS1145,JPM1137,JST1113,JUT1112,JUT1113,JUT1134,
          JUT1137,JUT1139,JUT1145) .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  RECEIVE S(DELDFP2) .
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) NOAPPLY DIS(WRITE) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Expect message HMA3971 SYSMOD DELDFP2 HAS NO ELEMENTS.
2. After executing this step, you may want to reclaim the DASD space that was released in the SMPACDS data set.

7.11 SMP4: MVS/SP 2.2.0 Cleanup jobs

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for considerations when using the MVS/SP cleanup jobs.

7.12 SMP4: RECEIVE, ACCEPT (NOAPPLY) Function to Delete IPCS

The prior version of IPCS must be deleted. For information, refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7.13 SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/SP 2.2.0

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7.14 SMP4: ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is sample JCL used to check for any PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. Receive the required PTFs as needed. Should the required PTFs be superseded by a higher level PTF, the superseding PTF number will have to be explicitly indicated for the SMP control statements as shown in the following example.

```
//ACCEPTCK JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0              *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  ACCEPT G(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZxxxxx,...) CHECK
  NOAPPLY DIS(WRITE) BYPASS(ID,PRE,REQ,IFREQ) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.

7.15 SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

After MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 has been received, as well as any accompanying PTFs, and has been checked, use the following sample JCL to accept the modules and macros into the DLIBs from the temporary SMPTLIB data sets. Using COMPRESS(ALL), SMP will compress the libraries, and then copy the new modules and macros into the DLIBs. When completed, SMP will update the SMPACDS data set.

```
//ACCEPT   JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*            ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  ACCEPT G(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZooooo,...)
          DIS(WRITE) COMPRESS(ALL)
          NOAPPLY .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.

7.16 SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/SP 2.2.0

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7.17 SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to ACCEPT NOAPPLY any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on the Cumulative Service Tape received in "SMP4: RECEIVE the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 34(Recommended service in the PSP should be accepted at this time.) If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step. The sample JCL will accept *ALL* SYSMODs received that have not already been accepted.

```
//ACEPTPTF JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS               *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
   ACCEPT DIS(WRITE) NOAPPLY COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Reference documentation accompanying the Cumulative Service Tape for "points of consideration" before installing.
2. Ensure that all products and service required for the SYSGEN have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.
3. An alternative to accepting all maintenance is to add an SMP SELECT statement to select each PTF received for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 except those that may need to be excluded.

7.18 SMP4: Initialize New System Residence Volume

Initialize the new system residence volume with IPL text. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7.19 SMP4: System Generation

The stage I sysgen process has been changed considerably for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The sysgen statements AFFINITY, CKPTREST, CONSOLE, CTRLPROG, EDIT, EDTGEN, IODEVICE, SCHEDULR, SVCTABLE, TSO, and UNITNAME are now obsolete for Stage 1 but still apply for MVSCP. Refer to the MVSCP Guide and Reference. The specification for including or excluding the full TSO command system and the Mass Storage Subsystem has been added to the DATAMGT statement. SYS1.DCMLIB is no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. The IND, TABLE, and UCSDFLT are no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. All parameters on the JES statement are no longer supported. On the GENERATE statement only GENTYPE = ALL is supported. For further details refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148

Execute a stage I and stage II sysgen. Output from stage I of the SYSGEN is input both to stage II and to "SMP4: Update SMPCDS with JCLIN:.

If the system used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is not a MVS/370 DFP or a MVS/XA DFP system, the LINKS procedure used for stage II needs to be modified to execute the MVS/XA DFP linkage editor.

The recommended approach to execute stage II jobs is to add inline procedures for each of the stage II jobs. The following is a sample of JCL with the LINKS procedures inline.

```
//STAGE2   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//LINKS    PROC
//STEPLIB  DD   DSN=USERLOAD,DISP=SHR
//LK EXEC PGM=HEWLH096,REGION=2048K,COND=(8,LT)
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=(NEW,DELETE),DSNAME=&&SYSUT1,
//       SPACE=(1700,(400,50)),UNIT=SYSDA
//SYSPRINT DD SPACE=(121,(850,50),RLSE),
//     DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=121,BLKSIZE=1210),SYSOUT=&CLASS
//SYSLMOD DD DISP=OLD,UNIT=&UNIT,VOL=SER=&SER,
```

```
//     DSNAME=&N..&NAME&P1&MOD&P2
//       PEND
//*
//*  PUT THE STAGE II INPUT HERE.
//*
```

Notes:

1. The LINKS procedure may be copied from the member LINKS of the dataset SYS1.APROCLIB.
2. A STEPLIB DD statement, pointing to the load library which contains the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor, has been added to the LINKS procedure. The data set name must be the same as the one substituted for USERLOAD in the STEPLIB DD statement in "SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 30.

7.20 SMP4: Copy SMPACDS and SMPACRQ Data Sets

Copy the SMPACDS to the SMPCDS and copy the SMPACRQ to the SMPCRQ.

7.21 SMP4: Update SMPCDS with JCLIN

The following is sample JCL which executes JCLIN to update the SMPCDS data set:

```
//JCLIN    JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              UPDATE SMPCDS WITH JCLIN                       *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPJCLIN DD  <see NOTE below>
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  JCLIN .
/*
```

Note: The SMPJCLIN data set must be the same one that was used in the SYSPUNCH DD statement in the SYSGEN stage I job.

7.22 SMP4: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from SMPPTS and SMPTLIB

The following is sample JCL to delete the temporary SMP data sets and SMPPTS entries created during the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation:

```
//REJECT   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*    REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 FROM SMPPTS AND SMPTLIB          *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  REJECT S(HDP2230,JDP2325,DELDFP2)
         PURGE .
/*
```

Note: Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

7.23 SMP4: REJECT PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is the sample JCL to reject the PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped in a separate Cumulative Service Tape from the SMPPTS that have been successfully accepted.

```
//REJPTF   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//REJPTFS  EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*            REJECT PTFS FOR MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                 *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB DD UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL DD *
  REJECT PURGE .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. *ALL* PTFs and FUNCTIONs successfully accepted will be rejected.

7.24 SMP4: SMPPTS Cleanup

Unless the SMPPTS is to be shared between MVS/370 and MVS/Extended Architecture systems, you may want to delete certain FMIDs from the SMPPTS system entry so that future (and unneeded) service will not be received for them. The FMIDs that are listed as deleted in the output of either the accept of function DELDFP2 (refer to "SMP4: RECEIVE, and ACCEPT NOAPPLY Function DELDFP2" on page 37), or the accept of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, may be deleted from the FMID list in the SMPPTS SYSTEM member. The following is sample JCL to delete FMIDs from the SMPPTS SYSTEM member:

```
//CLEANUP  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                    SMPPTS CLEANUP                           *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  UCLIN PTS .
  DEL SYS FMID(xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,...) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Note: xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,... should be replaced with the FMIDs to be deleted.

7.25 SMP4: Execute the MVS Configuration Program.

Execute the MVS Configuration Program (MVSCP) to define the I/O configuration. Refer to the MVSCP Guide and Reference.

7.26 SMP4: Update the SYS1.IMAGELIB

If you do not have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, skip this step.

SYS1.SAMPLIB member LCSBUILD contains the JCL necessary to install the 3800-1 library character sets, 3800-3 library character sets, 3800-3 graphic character modification modules, and certain 3800 character arrangement tables in SYS1.IMAGELIB. Refer to "Appendix D. JCL to Update SYS1.IMAGELIB" on page 116 for a description of the LCSBUILD job.

7.27 SMP4: Install JES2 (If Applicable)

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7.28 SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB and SYS1.PARMLIB

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7.29 SMP4: IPL the MVS/XA System

IPL the MVS/XA system and specify CLPA to refresh the link pack area (LPA) with the modules applied.

7.30 SMP4: Initialize the Stand-Alone Dump Program

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

7.31 SMP4: Making ISMF Available to the TSO User

Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

7.32 SMP4: Installation Verification Procedures (IVP)

Update the parameters in the job streams to meet your installation's requirements. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP), distributed as members DFPX1IVP, DFPX2IVP, DFPX3IVP in SYS1.SAMPLIB, to test the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation.

End of "SMP4: SYSGEN of HDP2230, JDP2325"

The following section is for the user

INSTALLING ONTO

MVS/370 DFP OR OS/VS2

MVS RELEASE 3.8

USING SMP/E

8.0 SMP/E: SYSGEN/GENERATE onto MVS/370 DFP or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8

SMP/E: SYSGEN/GENERATE of MVS/370 DFP or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8

This section assumes MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is being installed on OS/VS2 Release 3.8 or MVS/370 DFP V1 DLIBs using SMP/E GENERATE or by means of a full SYSGEN.

Refer to System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E) System Reference, SC28-1107 for information regarding the use of SMP/E.

In the installation steps that follow, it is assumed that the installation will take place on copies of existing DLIBs and SMP/E data sets.

SMP/E: Installation Procedure Overview

During the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 the SMP/E ACCEPT step will require a significant amount of time and DASD space.

To help avoid reruns and to provide recovery capability, you should:

- Ensure that all required data sets are defined in the SMP/E procedure.
- Carefully analyze the DASD space requirements of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
- Use copies of the target, SMP/E, and DLIB data sets.

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 includes some functions (see "Appendix B. Summary of Deletions" on page 109) that were formerly installed under several FMIDs; these previously installed FMIDs should be deleted before MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is installed. The FMIDs may be deleted during the installation process by installing the function DELDFP2 as described in "SMP/E: RECEIVE and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2" on page 59.

The following steps are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 using SMP/E. Each step is discussed in detail in later sections.

1. Review distribution library data set requirements. ***See also "SMP/E: Distribution Libraries" on page 47***
2. Review system data set requirements. Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148.
3. Review SMP/E data set requirements. GA26-4148. ***See "SMP/E: Data Sets" on page 49***
4. Update the SMP/E procedure in your system SYS1.PROCLIB. ***See "SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 50***
5. Update DDDEF entries in the global zone. ***See "SMP/E: Update DDDEF Entries in the Global Zone" on page 51***
6. Update DDDEF entries in the distribution zone. ***See "SMP/E: Update DDDEF Entries in the Distribution Zone" on page 51***
7. Update the UTILITY/OPTIONS entry in the global zone. ***See "SMP/E: Update UTILITY/OPTIONS Entry in the Global Zone" on page 55***
8. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325) into temporary libraries (SMPTLIBs). ***See "SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)" on page 55***

9. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 55*

10. Link-edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor from SMPTLIB into an authorized load library. *See "SMP/E: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor" on page 56*

11. Update UTILITY entry in the global zone. *See "SMP/E: Update UTILITY Entry in the Global Zone" on page 59*

12. RECEIVE and ACCEPT the function DELDFP2 to delete from the DLIBs the modules and macros that will be replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: RECEIVE and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2" on page 59*

13. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Cleanup jobs considerations in the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

14. RECEIVE, ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) function to delete IPCS. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

15. RECEIVE MVS/SP 2.2.0 Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

16. ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 61*

17. ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 61*

18. ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/SP 2.2.0 Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

19. ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP/E: ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 62*

    Note: Ensure that all products and service required for the SYSGEN have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.

20. Initialize the new system residence volume with IPL text. *See "SMP/E: Initialize New System Residence Volume" on page 63*

21. Execute a Stage I sysgen. *See "SMP/E: Execute a Stage I SYSGEN" on page 63*

22. Merge or copy the distribution zone to the target zone. *See "SMP/E: Merge or Copy the Distribution Zone to the Target Zone" on page 63*

23. Execute JCLIN to update the target zone with stage I output. *See "SMP/E: Update the Target Zone with JCLIN" on page 64*

24. Examine system generation options. *See "SMP/E: Examine System Generation Options" on page 64*

    a. Generate *See "SMP/E: GENERATE" on page 64*

        1) Ensure DDDEFs are defined for all permanent and temporary data sets.

        2) Generate FORFMID against the old target zone.

        3) JCLIN to the new target zone.

        4) Generate against the new target zone.

        5) Execute GENERATE produced jobstreams.

b. Full SYSGEN *See "SMP/E: Full SYSGEN" on page 66*

1) Update LINKS PROC.

2) Execute the stage II SYSGEN.

25. REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the global zone and SMPTLIB. *See "SMP/E: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the Global Zone and SMPTLIB" on page 67*

26. REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP/E: REJECT PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 67*

27. Execute a global zone cleanup. *See "SMP/E: Global Zone Cleanup" on page 67*

28. Execute the MVS Configuration Program (MVSCP) to define the I/O configuration. *See "SMP/E: Execute the MVS Configuration Program" on page 68*

29. If you have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, install library character sets, graphic character modification modules, and character arrangement tables.

30. Install JES2, if applicable. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

31. Update SYS1.PROCLIB and SYS1.PARMLIB, as required, to conform to the installation specifications. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

32. IPL the MVS/XA system. *See "SMP/E: IPL the MVS/XA System" on page 68*

33. Initialize the stand-alone dump program. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

34. Make ISMF available to the TSO user. Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

35. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP). Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for instructions on executing the IVP associated with that product. *See also "SMP/E: Installation Verification Procedures (IVP)" on page 69*

8.1 SMP/E: Distribution Libraries

The following table contains a list of the distribution libraries required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The space allocation is an estimate of the **additional** tracks and directory blocks required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 when COMPRESS is specified for SMP accept processing. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 DFP estimates must be added to those of other products being accepted that have modules in the same DLIBs.

		Estimated Additional DASD Space			
			Tracks		Dir
Data Set Name	Blocksize	3330	3350	3380	Block
SYS1.ACMDLIB	6144	0	0	5	6
SYS1.ADGTLLIB	6144	150	104	44	47
SYS1.ADGTMLIB	3120	25	17	5	4
SYS1.ADGTPLIB	3120	371	259	58	31
SYS1.ADGTTLIB	3120	19	13	1	1
SYS1.AGENLIB	1680	55	39	28	7
SYS1.AHELP	1680	19	14	9	4
SYS1.AIMAGE	12960	2614	1798	625	14
SYS1.ALINKLIB	6144	3	2	3	2
SYS1.ALPALIB	6144	3	2	2	2
SYS1.AMACLIB	1680	119	85	92	13
SYS1.AMODGEN	1680	172	122	44	4

SYS1.ANUCLEUS	6144	50	35	3	3
SYS1.AOSA0	6144	23	16	56	46
SYS1.AOSA1	6144	0	0	1	1
SYS1.AOSB3	6144	0	0	2	1
SYS1.AOSCA	6144	3	2	2	3
SYS1.AOSC2	6144	0	0	1	1
SYS1.AOSC5	6144	27	18	11	11
SYS1.AOSC6	6144	3	2	8	7
SYS1.AOSD0	6144	10	7	76	101
SYS1.AOSD7	6144	0	0	6	7
SYS1.AOSD8	6144	23	16	16	20
SYS1.AOSU0	6144	0	0	77	47
SYS1.AOS04	6144	0	0	6	4
SYS1.AOS05	6144	0	0	2	2
SYS1.AOS12	6144	0	0	4	4
SYS1.APROCLIB	800	0	0	1	2
SYS1.ASAMPLIB	1680	11	8	11	2
SYS1.ATSOMAC	1680	0	0	4	2
SYS1.CIPLIB	6144	20	14	6	6

8.1.1 SMP/E: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.AIMAGE

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires distribution library SYS1.AIMAGE, which is new unless MVS/370 DFP or IBM 3800 Model 1 Enhancements were previously installed. Since the space requirements for SYS1.AIMAGE are very large, you may choose to scratch and reallocate SYS1.AIMAGE before installing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 tapes.

SYS1.AIMAGE requires LRECL = 80 and RECFM = FB for the allocation. Since all members are large, the most efficient blocksize for DASD utilization is the largest multiple of 80 that will fit on the track and still be handled by the access methods.

8.1.2 SMP/E: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.CIPLIB

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires distribution library SYS1.CIPLIB, which is new unless the Offline IBM 3800 Utility Program (5748-UT2) was previously installed. This library will contain all modules and graphics for the utility that supports the offline IBM 3800 Model 1 and should be allocated as a PDS with BLKSIZE = 6144 and RECFM = U.

8.1.3 SMP/E: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.ANUCLEUS

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires a new distribution library. This should be allocated as a PDS with BLKSIZE = 6144 and RECFM = U.

8.1.4 SMP/E: Considerations when Allocating ISMF Data Sets

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four distribution libraries for ISMF. The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the DLIBs that you need to allocate, including record format, logical record length, block size, total space required, and the number of PDS directory blocks required. You may want to allocate more space than shown to allow room for future expansion.

Data Set Name	Execution RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	3350	3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.ADGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	44	47
SYS1.ADGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	5	4
SYS1.ADGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	58	31
SYS1.ADGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	1	1

8.2 *SMP/E: Target Libraries*

The System libraries can be defined either during SYSGEN, via the DATASET macro, or prior to the system generation, via the JCL and/or access method services. Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for details.

8.2.1 SMP/E: ISMF Target Libraries

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four target libraries for ISMF. The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the target libraries that you need to allocate. This includes record format, logical record length, block size, total space required (shown both as number of blocks and equivalent number of 3380 tracks), and the number of partitioned data set directory blocks required.

Execution Data Set Name	RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	Tracks 3350	Tracks 3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.DGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	34	26
SYS1.DGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	8	4
SYS1.DGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	115	31
SYS1.DGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	2	1

8.3 *SMP/E: Data Sets*

A full complement of SMP/E data sets are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

The SMPTLIB data sets are allocated by the receive process. Ensure that there is sufficient space available to allocate all SMPTLIB data sets on a single volume.

The following table provides an estimate of the additional tracks and directory blocks needed in the SMP/E data sets by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. These estimates must be added to those of any other products being installed to get the total additional space requirement.

		Estimated Additional DASD Space			
			Tracks		Dir
Data Set Name	Blocksize	3330	3350	3380	Block
* SMPCSI					
SMPPTS	12?60	3	2	1	1
SMPWRK1	3360	937	654	300	150
SMPWRK2	3360	937	654	300	150
SMPWRK3	3200	930	650	300	150
SMPWRK4	3200	930	650	300	150
SMPWRK5	6144	999	691	300	500
SYSUT1	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT2	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT3	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT4	-	234	163	75	-
SMPTLIB Files					
HDP2230.F1	6400	46	32	25	4
HDP2230.F2	6400	3917	2709	912	38
HDP2230.F3	6144	1069	740	328	309
JDP2325.F1	6400	46	32	78	35

Notes:

1. **Note * SMPCSI**: To define the SMP/E VSAM data set SMPCSI, refer to Installing System Modification Program Extended, SC23-0130.

2. The installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires a significant amount of space in the SMP data sets. Therefore, ***prior to starting (or restarting) any installation step***, you should perform a space analysis ***and*** ensure that sufficient space is available in the SMP data sets.

8.4 SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB

The following is an example of the JCL job stream to update SYS1.PROCLIB with a SMP/E procedure. Before using this sample procedure, modify it to fit your system's requirements. This SMP/E procedure is used in subsequent installation steps.

```
//SMPJOB   JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//         EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD    SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD    DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD    DATA
./ ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//* SAMPLE PROCEDURE CONTAINING JCL TO INSTALL MVS/XA DFP *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPEPROC PROC
//SMPE     EXEC PGM=GIMSMP,REGION=4096K,PARM='DATE=U'
//STEPCAT  DD DSN=USERCAT,DISP=SHR
//STEPLIB  DD DSN=USERLOAD,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  REQUIRED SMP WORK FILES
//*
//SMPWRK1  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK2  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK3  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK4  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK5  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,500)),
//         DCB=(RECFM=U,BLKSIZE=6144)
//*
//*  SMP PERMANENT DATA SETS
//*
//SMPCSI   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPE.CSI,DISP=SHR
./       ENDUP
/*
```

Notes:

1. A region of at least 4096K is required for the accept of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The actual amount of storage required depends on the number of SYSMODs processed.

2. A STEPLIB DD statement has been included in the procedure above. If the system used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is an MVS/370 DFP system or MVS/XA DFP system, the STEPLIB DD statement is not required. Otherwise, the linkage editor will be put into this library in a subsequent step in the installation procedure. The

library must be APF authorized, and must exist prior to executing this procedure in subsequent steps. For further information on link-editing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor see "SMP/E: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor" on page 56.

8.5 SMP/E: Update DDDEF Entries in the Global Zone

The sample JCL below updates the DDDEF entries in the global zone:

```
//DDDEFUPD JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*       UPDATE DDDEF ENTRIES IN THE GLOBAL ZONE               *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPLOG   DD  DSN=SYS1.SMPLOG,DISP=MOD
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  UCLIN .
  REP DDDEF(SMPLIST) SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SMPOUT) SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SMPRPT) SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SYSPRINT) SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SMPLOG) DA(SYS1.SMPLOG) MOD KEEP .
  REP DDDEF(SMPPTS) DA(SYS1.SMPPTS) SHR KEEP .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Note: The DDDEFs for SMPLIST, SMPOUT, SMPRPT, and SYSPRINT are valid only when using SMP/E Release 3. See Appendix C of the System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E) Reference, SC28-1107 for details on how to use the dynamic allocation function for SMP/E Release 2.

8.6 SMP/E: Update DDDEF Entries in the Distribution Zone

The sample JCL below updates the DDDEF entries in the distribution zone. Additional DDDEFs may be required depending on the program products installed on your system.

```
//DDDEFUPD JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*    UPDATE DDDEF ENTRIES IN THE DISTRIBUTION ZONE            *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPLOG   DD  DSN=SYS1.SMPLOG,DISP=MOD
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .
  UCLIN .
  REP DDDEF(SMPLOG)   DA(SYS1.SMPLOG)     MOD KEEP .
  REP DDDEF(SMPMTS)   DA(SYS1.SMPMTS)     SHR KEEP .
  REP DDDEF(SMPPTS)   DA(SYS1.SMPPTS)     SHR KEEP .
  REP DDDEF(SMPSCDS)  DA(SYS1.SMPSCDS)    SHR KEEP .
  REP DDDEF(SMPSTS)   DA(SYS1.SMPSTS)     SHR KEEP .
  REP DDDEF(SMPLIST)  SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SMPOUT)   SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SMPRPT)   SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SYSPRINT) SYSOUT(A) .
  REP DDDEF(SYSUT1)   CYL SPACE(5,5) UNIT(SYSDA) NEW DELETE .
  REP DDDEF(SYSUT2)   CYL SPACE(5,5) UNIT(SYSDA) NEW DELETE .
  REP DDDEF(SYSUT3)   CYL SPACE(5,5) UNIT(SYSDA) NEW DELETE .
```

```
REP DDDEF(SYSUT4)    CYL SPACE(5,5) UNIT(SYSDA) NEW DELETE .
REP DDDEF(BRODCAST) DA(SYS1.BRODCAST)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(CMDLIB)    DA(SYS1.CMDLIB)    UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(DCMLIB)    DA(SYS1.DCMLIB)    UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(DGTLLIB)   DA(SYS1.DGTLLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(DGTMLIB)   DA(SYS1.DGTMLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(DGTPLIB)   DA(SYS1.DGTPLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(DGTTLIB)   DA(SYS1.DGTTLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(HELP)      DA(SYS1.HELP)      UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(IMAGELIB) DA(SYS1.IMAGELIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(JES3LIB)   DA(SYS1.JES3LIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(JES3MAC)   DA(SYS1.JES3MAC)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(LINKLIB)   DA(SYS1.LINKLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(LPALIB)    DA(SYS1.LPALIB)    UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(MACLIB)    DA(SYS1.MACLIB)    UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(NUCLEUS)   DA(SYS1.NUCLEUS)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(PARMLIB)   DA(SYS1.PARMLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(PROCLIB)   DA(SYS1.PROCLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SAMPLIB)   DA(SYS1.SAMPLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SBLSCLIO) DA(SYS1.SBLSCLIO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SBLSKELO) DA(SYS1.SBLSKELO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SBLSTBLO) DA(SYS1.SBLSTBLO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SBLSMSGO) DA(SYS1.SBLSMSGO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SBLSPNLO) DA(SYS1.SBLSPNLO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SVCLIB)    DA(SYS1.SVCLIB)    UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(TELCMLIB) DA(SYS1.TELCMLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(UADS)      DA(SYS1.UADS)      UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(VTAMLIB)   DA(SYS1.VTAMLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(newres)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ABLSCLIO) DA(SYS1.ABLSCLIO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ABLSKELO) DA(SYS1.ABLSKELO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ABLSTBLO) DA(SYS1.ABLSTBLO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ABLSMSGO) DA(SYS1.ABLSMSGO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ABLSPNLO) DA(SYS1.ABLSPNLO)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ACMDLIB)   DA(SYS1.ACMDLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ADGTLLIB) DA(SYS1.ADGTLLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ADGTMLIB) DA(SYS1.ADGTMLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ADGTPLIB) DA(SYS1.ADGTPLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
```

```
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ADGTTLIB) DA(SYS1.ADGTTLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AGENLIB)  DA(SYS1.AGENLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AHELP)    DA(SYS1.AHELP)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AIMAGE)   DA(SYS1.AIMAGE)    UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AJES3MAC) DA(SYS1.AJES3MAC)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AJES3SRC) DA(SYS1.AJES3SRC)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ALINKLIB) DA(SYS1.ALINKLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ALPALIB)  DA(SYS1.ALPALIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AMACLIB)  DA(SYS1.AMACLIB)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AMODGEN)  DA(SYS1.AMODGEN)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ANUCLEUS) DA(SYS1.ANUCLEUS)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSA0)    DA(SYS1.AOSA0)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSA1)    DA(SYS1.AOSA1)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSBA)    DA(SYS1.AOSBA)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSBN)    DA(SYS1.AOSBN)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSB0)    DA(SYS1.AOSB0)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSB3)    DA(SYS1.AOSB3)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSCA)    DA(SYS1.AOSCA)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSCD)    DA(SYS1.AOSCD)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSCE)    DA(SYS1.AOSCE)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSC2)    DA(SYS1.AOSC2)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSC5)    DA(SYS1.AOSC5)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSC6)    DA(SYS1.AOSC6)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSD0)    DA(SYS1.AOSD0)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSD7)    DA(SYS1.AOSD7)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSD8)    DA(SYS1.AOSD8)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSG0)    DA(SYS1.AOSG0)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSH3)    DA(SYS1.AOSH3)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOST4)    DA(SYS1.AOST4)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOSU0)    DA(SYS1.AOSU0)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS00)    DA(SYS1.AOS00)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS04)    DA(SYS1.AOS04)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS05)    DA(SYS1.AOS05)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS06)    DA(SYS1.AOS06)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS11)    DA(SYS1.AOS11)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS12)    DA(SYS1.AOS12)     UNIT(SYSDA)
```

```
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS29)    DA(SYS1.AOS29)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AOS32)    DA(SYS1.AOS32)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(APARMLIB) DA(SYS1.APARMLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(APROCLIB) DA(SYS1.APROCLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ASAMPLIB) DA(SYS1.ASAMPLIB)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(ATSOMAC)  DA(SYS1.ATSOMAC)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(AUADS)    DA(SYS1.AUADS)     UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(CIPLIB)   DA(SYS1.CIPLIB)    UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(DASDIST)  DA(SYS1.DASDIST)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(DASDMACS) DA(SYS1.DASDMACS)  UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(HASPSRC)  DA(SYS1.HASPSRC)   UNIT(SYSDA)
    VOLUME(dlbvol)  SHR .
REP DDDEF(SYSLIB)   CONCAT(AMACLIB,
                           AMODGEN,
                           AGENLIB) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Notes:

1. The DDDEFs for for SMPLIST, SMPOUT, SMPRPT, SYSPRINT, SYSUT1, SYSUT2, SYSUT3, and SYSUT4, are valid only when using SMP/E Release 3. See Appendix C of the System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E) Reference, SC28-1107 for details on how to use the dynamic allocation function for SMP/E Release 2.

2. newres refers to the new System Residence volume.

3. dlbvol refers to the current DLIB volume.

4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.

5. If the Direct Access Storage Dump Restore (DASDR) program product (5740-UT1, FMID JDS1112) is installed, then DDDEFs are required for ddname DASDIST and ddname DASDMACS. These DDDEFs are included in the sample JCL above. If DASDR is not installed, these DDDEFs are not required.

6. Unless your installation already uses the Offline IBM 3800 Utility program, SYS1.CIPLIB will need to be allocated.

7. SYS1.ANUCLEUS is a new library and needs to be allocated.

8. SYS1.ABLSCLI0, SYS1.ABLSKEL0, SYS1.ABLSMSG0, SYS1.ABLSPNL0, SYS1.ABLSTBL0 are new libraries and need to be allocated. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

9. DDDEFs for JES3LIB, JES3MAC, AJES3MAC, and AJES3SRC are only needed if JES3 has been installed.

10. Target libraries are defined once and will be included in the target zone by zonecopy.

11. SYS1.ADGTLLIB, SYS1.ADGTMLIB, SYS1.ADGTPLIB, SYS1.ADGTTLIB are four new ISMF libraries that need to be allocated.

8.7 SMP/E: Update UTILITY/OPTIONS Entry in the Global Zone

Sample JCL to update these fields in the UTILITY/OPTIONS entries follows. The job executes the SMP/E procedure created in "SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 50.

```
//CSIOPT   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*   UPDATE UTILITY/OPTIONS ENTRY IN THE GLOBAL ZONE           *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  UCLIN .
  REP OPTIONS(optname)
      PEMAX(7500) DSSPACE(500,500,750) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Notes:

1. optname - this is the OPTIONS entry name. You may update a current entry name or create a new entry name. You must ensure that the default OPTIONS name in each zone contains this entry name.
2. **DSSPACE** - this subentry of the PTS system entry specifies the number of primary tracks, the number of secondary tracks, and the number of directory blocks that are needed for each SMPTLIB data set in order to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

8.8 SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)

The following is sample JCL to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. In this step all the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 code, organized as unloaded partitioned data sets, is loaded into SMPTLIB data sets. The first file on the tape contains the SMP/E modification control statements required for this operation.

```
//RCVEFCTN JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*         RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)          *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DSN=SMPMCS,DISP=(OLD,PASS),
//  VOL=SER=DP2230,UNIT=(TAPE,,DEFER),
//  LABEL=(,SL)
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  RECEIVE S(HDP2230,JDP2325) LIST SYSMODS .
/*
```

Note: Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

8.9 SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to receive any PTFs and HOLDDATA for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on a Cumulative Service Tape that accompanied the product tapes and

recommended service in the PSP. If no additional PTFs were shipped on a separate tape, skip this step.

```
//RCVEPTFS JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC PGM=SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*            RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS                    *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DISP=(SHR,PASS),
//  VOL=(PRIVATE,RETAIN,SER=DFPPTF),
//  UNIT=TAPE,LABEL=(1,NL),
//  DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=32720),
//  DSN=SMPPTFIN
//SMPHOLD  DD  DISP=(SHR,PASS),
//  VOL=(PRIVATE,RETAIN,SER=DFPPTF),
//  UNIT=TAPE,LABEL=(4,NL),
//  DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=32720),
//  DSN=SMPHOLD
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  RECEIVE LIST SOURCEID(xxxxxxx) .
/*
```

Note: Replace xxxxxxx with a unique user defined name to assign a common identifier to the SYSMODs received.

8.10 SMP/E: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor

If the system used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is an MVS/370 DFP system or MVS/XA DFP system, skip this step and continue with "SMP/E: Update UTILITY Entry in the Global Zone" on page 59.

This step link-edits the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor into a load library on the installing system so that it can be used in subsequent steps of the installation. The same copy of the linkage editor will also be put into SYS1.LINKLIB of the MVS/XA system during the SYSGEN.

Note: It is recommended that you do ***not*** link-edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor into SYS1.LINKLIB on your installing system. No OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 maintenance will be provided for the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. However, if the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor is link-edited into the installing system's SYS1.LINKLIB, ***and*** the linkage editor is included in the BLDL table (as an entry in IEABLDxx in SYS1.PARMLIB), you *may* IPL after link-editing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor or include SYS1.LINKLIB in the STEPLIB DD statement in SYS1.PROCLIB. This will initialize the BLDL table with the device address (TTR) of the new copy of the linkage editor.

To allow for the additional option of using the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system while continuing to ensure its maintenance on an MVS/XA system, the load library into which the linkage editor is link-edited may be made a second permanent target library known to SMP/E on the MVS/XA system.

1. The JCL to link-edit the linkage editor exists in the SMPTLIB data set (member name LKEDJCL) as part of a procedure (procedure name DFPLKED), and includes the JCL to put the procedure in SYS1.PROCLIB. Also included are the linkage editor SYSLIN input records, which are put in SYS1.PARMLIB as member LKEDCNTL.

   Use the following sample JCL to punch member LKEDJCL from the SMPTLIB data set to the internal reader:

```
//GENER   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//LST     EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*           OBTAIN LKEDJCL JOB FROM SMPTLIB                   *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=prefix.HDP2230.F2(LKEDJCL),
//  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SYSUT2   DD  SYSOUT=(A,INTRDR)
//SYSIN    DD  DUMMY
/*
```

Notes:

a. Replace prefix with the same value that is used for the DSPREFIX entry in the OPTIONS entry in the global zone.

b. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial for the SMPTLIB data sets.

2. Start the reader to read in and execute job LKEDJCL (shown below). Job LKEDJCL uses IEBUPDTE to:

   - Write procedure DFPLKED to SYS1.PROCLIB. The DFPLKED procedure is used to link-edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor.
   - Write the SYSLIN input records for procedure DFPLKED to SYS1.PARMLIB (member LKEDCNTL).

```
//LKEDJCL  JOB   MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//STEP1    EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD    SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD    DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD    DATA,DLM=ZZ
./ ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=DFPLKED
//DFPLKED  PROC  OUTLIB=USERLOAD,PREFIX='',
//  FMID=HDP2230,TUNIT=SYSDA,VOLSER=XAVOL
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*       LINK-EDIT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 LINKAGE EDITOR             *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//LKED     EXEC  PGM=HEWL,PARM='LET,LIST,XREF,NCAL'
//SYSPRINT DD    SYSOUT=A
//SYSLMOD  DD    DSN=&OUTLIB,DISP=SHR
//TLIB     DD    DSN=&PREFIX&FMID..F3,DISP=SHR,
//  UNIT=&TUNIT,VOL=SER=DP1102
//SYSUT1   DD    UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=NEW,SPACE=(CYL,(3,1))
//SYSLIN   DD    DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB(LKEDCNTL),DISP=SHR
ZZ
//STEP2    EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD    SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD    DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD    DATA,DLM=ZZ
./ ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=LKEDCNTL
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFROU,HEWLFAPT,HEWLFINT,HEWLFOPT)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFINP,HEWLFESD,HEWLFEND,HEWLFSYM)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFRCG,HEWLFSCN,HEWLFRAT,HEWLFIDR)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFINC,HEWLFMAP,HEWLFADA,HEWLFENT)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFENS,HEWLFOUT,HEWLFREL,HEWLFSCD)
       INCLUDE TLIB(HEWLFFNL,HEWLFBTP,HEWLFDEF)
       ENTRY HEWLFROU
       ALIAS IEWL
       ALIAS IEWLF440
       ALIAS IEWLF880
       ALIAS IEWLF128
       ALIAS HEWL
       ALIAS LINKEDIT
       ALIAS HEWLF064
       NAME HEWLH096(R)
ZZ
```

3. The SYSLMOD data set and the SMPTLIB data set qualifiers and location must be specified by the operator when the procedure is started. The SYSLMOD data set must be cataloged. If you specified a value for DSPREFIX, you must use the same value for parameter PREFIX in this step. The FMID defaults to HDP2230 and JDP2325. VOLSER identifies the volume serial, and TUNIT identifies the device type on which the SMPTLIBs are located; both must be specified if the defaults are not valid for your system.

4. Following is an example of how to start the procedure to link-edit the linkage editor:

```
S DFPLKED,PREFIX='DF.',VOLSER=TEMPLB,TUNIT='3330-1'
```

   In the example above, the modules which make up the linkage editor are taken from a data set named DF.HDP2230.F3 on volume TEMPLB and are link-edited into a cataloged load library named USERLOAD (the default), which resides on a 3330-1 volume. Ensure that the PREFIX is entered in upper case, enclosed in apostrophes. All parameters containing special characters (for example, 3330-1) must be enclosed in apostrophes.

5. Update the UTILITY entry in the global zone data set. Subentry NAME must be updated with the name of the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. This job should not be run until the linkage editor has been put into the new load library.

   Assign the name HEWLH096 to ensure that the correct linkage editor is loaded and used during the installation process. (Previously used linkage editor names and aliases are valid as aliases for HEWLH096 *after* the MVS/XA system has been installed, but do not guarantee that the correct version of the linkage editor will be loaded during the installation process.)

Some users may choose to prepare for MVS/XA by link-editing certain load modules on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system before copying them to their MVS/XA system. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor can be executed on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system, yet continue to be owned and maintained by an MVS/XA system. This is accomplished by allocating the load library containing the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor on shared DASD. Jobs executing on OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 may access this load library using a STEPLIB DD statement.

If you identify to SMP this second load library, SMP will maintain the linkage editor in this library as well as in SYS1.LINKLIB. Using the example below, run a job to assign a second target library to the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. (This example assumes the assignment of the same load library as that substituted for USERLOAD throughout the installation process.)

```
//CSIUCL   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*UPDATE THE TARGET ZONE TO ASSIGN SECOND TARGET LIBRARY*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(tgtzone) .
  UCLIN .
  ADD LMOD(HEWLH096)
  SYSLIB(USERLOAD) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Notes:

1. The SYSLIB entry in the UCLIN job stream specifies the *ddname* in the SMP procedure on the DD statement which identifies the target library, not the data set name itself. However, the ddname and the data set name are frequently the same, as shown in the example below.

2. tgtzone is the name of your target zone.

Subsequent maintenance against the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor, using SMP APPLY, will require that this second load library be identified in the SMP procedure. Add a DD statement

(whose ddname is the same as that specified for the SYSLIB option) to your SMP procedure. For example:

```
//USERLOAD  DD   DSN=USERLOAD,DISP=SHR
```

Since MVS/SP 2.2.0 has a similar option for executing some of its programs on an OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 system, it may be convenient to put all the programs in the same load library. See MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for a discussion of its migration job stream.

8.11 SMP/E: Update UTILITY Entry in the Global Zone

The sample JCL below updates the NAME field in the UTILITY entry LKED. The job executes the SMP/E procedure created in "SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 50.

```
//CSIOPT   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*       UPDATE UTILITY ENTRY IN THE GLOBAL ZONE               *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  UCLIN .
  REP OPTIONS(optname) LKED(LKEDUTIL) .
  REP UTILITY (LKEDUTIL)
      NAME(HEWLH096)
      PARM(LIST,LET,SIZE=(1526K,96K),NCAL,XREF)
      RC(8) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Notes:

1. NAME - indicates the name of the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. Assign the name HEWLH096 to ensure that the MVS/XA or MVS/370 DFP linkage editor is loaded and used during the installation process.

   Note: Previously used linkage editor names and aliases are valid as aliases for HEWLH096 after the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 system has been installed, but do not guarantee that the correct version of the linkage editor will be loaded during the installation process.

8.12 SMP/E: RECEIVE and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2

The following is sample JCL to delete functions replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. During processing, the functions deleted by DELDFP2 (and all dependent functions) will be removed from the distribution zone and their modules and macros will be deleted from the distribution libraries.

This job can be gotten from the SMPTLIBS as member DFPCLN09 of the partitioned data set prefix.HDP2230.F2 which is created during the receive process of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The high-level qualifier of this data set name depends on the DSPREFIX value, if any, specified in the OPTIONS entry in the GLOBAL zone. Run this after modifying it to meet you system's requirements.

```
//DFPCLN09 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE FUNCTIONS REPLACED BY
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, AND SHOULD BE RUN BEFORE IT IS ACCEPTED.
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP/E USER WHO IS INSTALLING
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 ONTO MVS/370 DFP OR OS/VS2 MVS RELEASE 3.8
//* DLIBS PRIOR TO DOING A FULL SYSGEN OR SMP/E GENERATE. THIS
//* JOB ASSUMES A PROCEDURE NAMED "SMPE" EXISTS WITH ALL
//* DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED.
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP1   EXEC SMPE
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)
   DELETE(EDM1102,EDS1102,EPM1102,EST1102,EUT1102,FDM1133,FDS1122,
          FDS1133,FDS1143,FDS1243,FDS1443,FDS1543,FUT1133,HDP1102,
          HDP2210,HDQ1102,JDM1112,JDM1113,JDM1116,JDM1122,JDM1132,
          JDM1134,JDM1136,JDM1137,JDM1138,JDM1139,JDM1141,JDM1142,
          JDM1145,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,JDP1113,JDP2220,JDP2221,
          JDP2222,JDP2223,JDQ1110,JDQ1111,JDS1112,JDS1125,JDS1134,
          JDS1136,JDS1137,JDS1139,JDS1140,JDS1145,JPM1137,JST1113,
          JUT1112,JUT1134,JUT1137,JUT1139,JUT1145)  .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  RECEIVE LIST SYSMODS .
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .  /* change to your distribution zone */
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Expect message GIM3971 SYSMOD DELDFP2 HAS NO ELEMENTS.
2. After executing this step, you may want to reclaim the DASD space that was released in the SMPCSI data set.
3. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.
4. After executing this job the DDDEFs and corresponding libraries for DASDIST and DASDMACS may be deleted if the DASDR program product was previously installed.

8.13 SMP/E: MVS/SP 2.2.0 Cleanup Jobs

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory concerning cleanup jobs.

8.14 SMP/E: RECEIVE, ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) Function to Delete IPCS

To delete previous version of the IPCS product, refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

8.15 SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/SP 2.2.0

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

8.16 SMP/E: ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is sample JCL to check for any PTFs for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. Receive the required PTFs as needed. Should the required PTFs be superseded by a higher level PTF, the superseding PTF number will have to be explicitly indicated for the SMP control statements as shown in the following example.

```
//ACCEPTCK JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*   ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .
  ACCEPT CHECK S(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZooooo,...)
         BYPASS(APPLYCHECK,ID,PRE,REQ,IFREQ,HOLDSYS(FULLGEN,MVSCP))
         GROUP .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.
4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.
5. Additional system holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.
6. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

8.17 SMP/E: ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

Once MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 has been received and checked, use the following sample JCL to accept the modules and macros into the DLIBs from the temporary SMPTLIB data sets. SMP/E will delete all modules and macros which are to be replaced in the DLIBs, compress the libraries, and copy or link-edit the new modules and macros.

```
//ACCEPT   JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*       ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0            *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .
  ACCEPT S(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZxxxxx,...)
         BYPASS(APPLYCHECK,HOLDSYS(FULLGEN,MVSCP))
         GROUP COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.
4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.
5. Additional system holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.
6. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

8.18 SMP/E: ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/SP 2.2.0

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

8.19 SMP/E: ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to accept any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on the Cumulative Service Tape and recommended service received in the PSP. If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step.

```
//ACEPTPTF JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS                   *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .
   ACCEPT SOURCEID(xxxxxxx)
   BYPASS(APPLYCHECK,HOLDSYS(FULLGEN))
   COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Reference documentation accompanying the Cumulative Service Tape for "points of consideration" before installing.
2. Replace xxxxxxx with the user defined name for SYSMODs received.

3. Ensure that all products and service required for the SYSGEN have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.
4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.
5. Additional system holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.
6. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

8.20 SMP/E: Initialize New System Residence Volume

Initialize the new system residence volume with IPL text. Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

8.21 SMP/E: Execute a Stage I SYSGEN

The stage I sysgen process has been changed considerably for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The sysgen statements AFFINITY, CKPTREST, CONSOLE, CTRLPROG, EDIT, EDTGEN, IODEVICE, SCHEDULR, SVCTABLE, TSO, AND UNITNAME are now obsolete. The specification for including or excluding the full TSO command system and the Mass Storage Subsystem has been added to the DATAMGT statement. SYS1.DCMLIB is no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. THE IND, TABLE and UCSDFLT are no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. All parameters on the JES statement are no longer supported. On the GENERATE statement only GENTYPE=ALL is supported. For further details refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148.

Execute a stage I sysgen. Output from stage I is input to "SMP/E: Update the Target Zone with JCLIN", and to stage II sysgen if applicable.

8.22 SMP/E: Merge or Copy the Distribution Zone to the Target Zone

The following is sample JCL to copy the distribution zone into the target zone:

```
//ZCOPY    JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*  Copy the distribution zone into the target zone            *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  UCLIN .
  ADD GZONE
  ZINDEX((newtgt,newtgt.tgtzne.csi,TARGET)) .
  ENDUCL .
  SET BDY(newtgt) .
  ZONECOPY(dlbzone) INTO(newtgt) RELATED(dlbzone) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. ZONEMERGE must be used instead of ZONECOPY if the dirstibution and target zones are defined in the same CSI. Refer to the System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E) Reference SC28-1107 to use the ZONEMERGE statement.
2. newtgt is the name of your new target zone.
3. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.
4. newtgt.tgtzne.csi is the name of the new target CSI. Refer to Chapter 4 of Installing System Modification Extended to define this data set.

8.23 SMP/E: Update the Target Zone with JCLIN

The following sample JCL illustrates how to execute JCLIN to update the target zone:

```
//JCLIN    JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          UPDATE THE TARGET ZONE WITH JCLIN                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPJCLIN DD  < Note 1 >
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(newtgt) .
  JCLIN .
/*
```

Notes:

1. The SMPJCLIN data set must be the same one that was used in the SYSPUNCH DD statement in the SYSGEN stage I output. Refer to "SMP/E: Execute a Stage I SYSGEN" on page 63.
2. newtgt is the name of your new target zone.

8.24 SMP/E: Examine System Generation Options

If installing via GENERATE, continue with "SMP/E: GENERATE", and then skip to "SMP/E: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the Global Zone and SMPTLIB" on page 67.

If installation via a full SYSGEN, refer to "SMP/E: Full SYSGEN" on page 66.

8.25 SMP/E: GENERATE

Prior to using GENERATE, review the GENERATE command description in the System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E) Reference, SC28-1107. Ensure that your target zone has a DDDEF for each permanent and temporary data sets before proceding with GENERATE processing.

8.25.1 SMP/E: GENERATE FORFMID

Process the GENERATE command using the FORFMID operand. You must specify each product that does not have SYSGEN support. This will place a set of JCL into the data set specified by the SMPPUNCH DDCARD. This JCL represents the control information for the non-SYSGEN products that were specified in the FORFMID operand. Save the output in SMPPUNCH for the next step.

```
//GENERATE JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                  GENERATE FORFMID                           *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPUNCH DD  DSN=SMPE.GENERATE.PUNCH1,DISP=SHR
//JCARD    DD  DSN=MY.JOBS,DISP=SHR
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(oldtgt) .
  GENERATE FORFMID(xxxxxxx) JOBCARD(JCARD,JOBCARD) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. The xxxxxxx represents an FMID or FMIDs which are installed on the DLIBs but have no SYSGEN support.
2. The oldtgt refers to the target zone of a previous system where control information exists for non-SYSGEN products.
3. JCARD refers to a data set that contains a valid jobcard.

8.25.2 SMP/E: JCLIN

Run JCLIN to update the new target zone with the control information created by GENERATE FORFMID operation from the previous step.

```
//JCLIN    JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                      JCLIN                                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPJCLIN DD  DSN=SMPE.GENERATE.PUNCH1,DISP=SHR
//JCARD    DD  DSN=MY.JOBS,DISP=SHR
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(tgtzone) .
  JCLIN .
/*
```

Note: newtgt is the name of your new target zone.

8.25.3 SMP/E: Generate Against the New Target Zone

Process the GENERATE command without the FORFMID operand to generate jobs for all of the functions that are now described in the new target zone. Save the output in SMPPUNCH for the next step.

```
//GENER    JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          GENERATE AGAINST THE NEW TARGET ZONE               *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPUNCH DD  DSN=SMPE.GENERATE.PUNCH2,DISP=SHR
//JCARD    DD  DSN=MY.JOBS,DISP=SHR
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(newtgt) .
  GENERATE JOBCARD(JCARD,JOBCARD) .
/*
```

Note: newtgt is the name of your new target zone.

8.25.4 SMP/E: Execute Jobs Created by GENERATE

The SMPPUNCH output from the GENERATE command contains several jobs. The first job is the COPYJOB which does all of the copies for all of the libraries. This job must be run first. The remaining jobs, where each job affects only a specific library, may be run concurrently. All of the jobs must be executed. Ensure that a DFP linkage editor will be used. Refer to "SMP/E: Link-Edit the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Linkage Editor" on page 56.

This is the end of the GENERATE option. Skip to "SMP/E: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the Global Zone and SMPTLIB" on page 67.

8.26 SMP/E: Full SYSGEN

Execute the stage II SYSGEN jobstream.

If the system used to install MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is not a MVS/370 DFP or a MVS/XA DFP system, the LINKS procedure used for stage II needs to be modified to execute the MVS/XA DFP linkage editor.

The recommended approach to execute stage II jobs is to add inline procedures for each of the stage II jobs. The following is a sample of JCL with the LINKS procedures inline.

```
//STAGE2 JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//LINKS  PROC
//STEPLIB DD DSN=USERLOAD,DISP=SHR
//LK EXEC PGM=HEWLH096,REGION=2048K,COND=(8,LT)
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=(NEW,DELETE),DSNAME=&&SYSUT1,
//       SPACE=(1700,(400,50)),UNIT=SYSDA
//SYSPRINT DD SPACE=(121,(850,50),RLSE),
//    DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=121,BLKSIZE=1210),SYSOUT=&CLASS
//SYSLMOD DD DISP=OLD,UNIT=&UNIT,VOL=SER=&SER,
//    DSNAME=&N..&NAME&P1&MOD&P2
//         PEND
//*
//*  PUT THE STAGE II INPUT HERE.
//*
```

Notes:

1. The LINKS procedure may be copied from the member LINKS of the dataset SYS1.APROCLIB.

2. A STEPLIB DD statement, pointing to the load library which contains the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor, has been added to the LINKS procedure. The data set name must be the same as the one substituted for USERLOAD in the STEPLIB DD statement in "SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 50.

8.27 SMP/E: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the Global Zone and SMPTLIB

The following is sample JCL to delete the temporary SMP/E data sets and the global zone entries created during the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation:

```
//REJECT   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 FROM THE GLOBAL ZONE AND SMPPTS      *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  REJECT S(HDP2230,JDP2325,DELDFP2)
  BYPASS(ACCEPTCHECK,APPLYCHECK) .
/*
```

Note: Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

8.28 SMP/E: REJECT PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is sample JCL to reject the PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped in a separate Cumulative Service Tape from the SMPPTS that have been successfully accepted. If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step.

```
//REJPTF   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//REJPTFS  EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*           REJECT PTFS FOR MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  REJECT PURGE(dlbzone)
         SOURCEID(xxxxxxx) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace xxxxxxx with the user defined name for SYSMODs received.
2. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.

8.29 SMP/E: Global Zone Cleanup

If the SMPPTS and the global zone that was used for the receive processing is to be used exclusively for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, (not commonly shared across MVS/370 or MVS/XA systems), you may want to delete certain FMIDs from the global zone entry so that future (and unneeded) service will not be received for them. The FMIDs that are listed as deleted in the output of either the accept of function DELDFP2 (refer to "SMP/E: RECEIVE and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2" on page

59), or the accept of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 may be deleted from the FMID list in the global zone. The following is sample JCL to delete FMIDs from the global zone.

```
//CLEANUP  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                  GLOBAL ZONE CLEANUP                        *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL).
  UCLIN.
  DEL GLOBALZONE FMID(xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,...).
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Note: xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,... should be replaced with the FMIDs to be deleted.

8.30 SMP/E: Execute the MVS Configuration Program

Execute the MVS Configuration Program (MVSCP) to define the I/O configuration. Refer to the MVSCP Guide and Reference.

8.31 SMP/E: Update the SYS1.IMAGELIB

If you do not have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, skip this step.

SYS1.SAMPLIB member LCSBUILD contains the JCL necessary to install the 3800-1 library character sets, 3800-3 library character sets, 3800-3 graphic character modification modules, and certain 3800 character arrangement tables in SYS1.IMAGELIB. Refer to "Appendix D. JCL to Update SYS1.IMAGELIB" on page 116 for a description of the LCSBUILD job.

8.32 SMP/E: Install JES2 (if applicable)

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

8.33 SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB and SYS1.PARMLIB

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

8.34 SMP/E: IPL the MVS/XA System

IPL the MVS/XA system and specify CLPA to refresh the link pack area (LPA) with the modules applied.

8.35 SMP/E: Initialize the Stand-Alone Dump Program

Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

8.36 SMP/E: Making ISMF Available to the TSO User

Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

8.37 SMP/E: Installation Verification Procedures (IVP)

Update the parameters in the job streams to meet your installation's requirements. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP), distributed as members DFPX1IVP, DFPX2IVP, DFPX3IVP in SYS1.SAMPLIB, to test the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation.

End of "SMP/E: SYSGEN/GENERATE of HDP2230, JDP2325"

The following section is for the user

INSTALLING ONTO AN EXISTING MVS/XA DFP SYSTEM USING SMP4

9.0 SMP4: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System

SMP4: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System Installation Steps

This section assumes that MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is being applied to an existing MVS/XA DFP target system (base level functions FMIDs HDP1102 or HDP2210 installed; dependent level functions such as FMIDs JDP1110, JDP1111 or JDP2220 may also have been installed) using SMP4.

Because this section uses the Stage 1 sysgen process to create JCLIN that is used in a subsequent APPLY step, all SYSMODs with SYSGEN support that have been applied must also be accepted or restored prior to executing a Stage 1 sysgen. Failure to do this may result in service level regression..

SMP4: Installation Procedure Overview

During the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, the SMP APPLY and ACCEPT steps will require a significant amount of DASD space.

To help avoid reruns and to provide recovery capability, you should:

- Ensure that all required data sets are defined in the SMP procedure.
- Carefully analyze the DASD space requirements of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
- Use copies of the target, SMP, and DLIB data sets.

The following steps are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 using SMP Release 4. Each step is discussed in detail in later sections.

1. Review distribution library data set requirements. ***See "SMP4: Distribution Libraries" on page 72***
2. Review system data set requirements. Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148
3. Review SMP4 data set requirements. ***See "SMP4: Data Sets" on page 75***
4. Update the SMP4 procedure in your system SYS1.PROCLIB. ***See "SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 75***
5. Update the PTS system entry in SMPPTS. ***See "SMP4: Update the SMPPTS System Entry" on page 77***
6. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325) into temporary libraries (SMPTLIBs). ***See "SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)" on page 78***
7. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. ***See " SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 78***
8. RECEIVE MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.
9. Execute cleanup jobs to relink or delete restructured load modules for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. ***See "SMP4: Execute MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Cleanup Jobs" on page 79***
10. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for consideration when using the MVS/SP cleanup jobs.
11. RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT the function DELDFP2 to delete the modules and macros replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. ***See "SMP4: RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2" on page 79***

12. ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP4: ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 80*
13. ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 80*
14. ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 81*
15. ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

    Note: Ensure that all products and service required have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.
16. Execute a stage I SYSGEN specifying GENTYPE=ALL. *See "SMP4: Execute a Stage I SYSGEN" on page 82*
17. Execute JCLIN using stage I output to update SMPCDS. *See "SMP4: Update SMPCDS with JCLIN" on page 82*
18. APPLY CHECK for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP4: APPLY CHECK MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 82*
19. APPLY for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP4: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 83*
20. APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP4: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 83*
21. APPLY MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.
22. Execute the MVS Configuration Program (MVSCP) to define the I/O configuration. *See "SMP4: Execute the MVS Configuration Program" on page 84*
23. Install new IPL Text. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.
24. Execute REJECT to delete temporary SMP4 data sets. *See "SMP4: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from SMPPTS and SMPTLIB" on page 84*
25. REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP4: REJECT PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 85*
26. Execute SMPPTS cleanup to delete FMIDs from the SMPPTS system member. *See "SMP4: SMPPTS CLEANUP" on page 85*
27. If you have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, install library character sets, graphic character modification modules, and character arrangement tables.
28. IPL the MVS/XA system. *See "SMP4: IPL the MVS/XA System" on page 86*
29. Make ISMF available to the TSO user. Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.
30. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP). *See "SMP4: Installation Verification Procedures (IVP)" on page 86*

9.1 SMP4: Distribution Libraries

The following table contains a list of the distribution libraries required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The space allocation is an estimate of the **additional** tracks and directory blocks required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 when COMPRESS is specified for SMP

accept processing. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 DFP estimates must be added to those of other products being accepted that have modules in the same DLIBs.

Estimated Additional DASD Space

	Data Set Name	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	Tracks 3350	Tracks 3380	Dir Block
	SYS1.ACMDLIB	6144	0	0	5	6
	SYS1.ADGTLLIB	6144	150	104	44	47
	SYS1.ADGTMLIB	3120	25	17	5	4
	SYS1.ADGTPLIB	3120	371	259	58	31
	SYS1.ADGTTLIB	3120	19	13	1	1
	SYS1.AGENLIB	12960	14	10	28	7
	SYS1.AHELP	6480	0	0	9	4
*	SYS1.AIMAGE	12960	2614	1798	625	14
	SYS1.ALINKLIB	6144	3	2	3	2
	SYS1.ALPALIB	6144	3	2	2	2
	SYS1.AMACLIB	12960	0	0	92	13
	SYS1.AMODGEN	12960	3	2	44	4
	SYS1.ANUCLEUS	6144	3	2	3	3
	SYS1.AOSA0	6144	17	12	56	46
	SYS1.AOSA1	6144	0	0	1	1
	SYS1.AOSB3	6144	0	0	2	1
	SYS1.AOSCA	6144	0	0	2	3
	SYS1.AOSC2	6144	0	0	1	1
	SYS1.AOSC5	6144	3	2	11	11
	SYS1.AOSC6	6144	3	2	8	7
	SYS1.AOSD0	6144	0	0	76	101
	SYS1.AOSD7	6144	0	0	6	7
	SYS1.AOSD8	6144	0	0	16	20
	SYS1.AOSU0	6144	1	1	77	47
	SYS1.AOS04	6144	0	0	6	4
	SYS1.AOS05	6144	0	0	2	2
	SYS1.AOS12	6144	0	0	4	4
	SYS1.APROCLIB	800	0	0	1	2
	SYS1.ASAMPLIB	1680	0	0	11	2
	SYS1.ATSOMAC	12960	0	0	4	2
	SYS1.CIPLIB	6144	0	0	6	6

Note * SYS1.AIMAGE: Users who previously had installed MVS/XA DFP 1.2.0 or higher will not need to increase the size of SYS1.AIMAGE.

9.1.1 SMP4: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.ANUCLEUS

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires a new distribution library. This library should be allocated as a PDS with BLKSIZE = 6144 and RECFM = U.

9.1.2 SMP4: ISMF Distribution Data Sets

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four distribution libraries for ISMF. The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the DLIBs that you need to allocate, including record format, logical record length, block size, total space required, and the number of PDS directory blocks required. You may want to allocate more space than shown to allow room for future expansion.

Note: These data sets would already exist if MVS/XA DFP 2.2 was previously installed.

Data Set Name	Execution RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	3350	3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.ADGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	44	47
SYS1.ADGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	5	4
SYS1.ADGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	58	31
SYS1.ADGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	1	1

9.2 *SMP4: Target Libraries*

The following table identifies the target libraries required and the additional space needed for installing MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 on an existing MVS/XA DFP V1 or V2 system. The space allocation is an estimate of the additional tracks and directory blocks required for SMP apply processing when COMPRESS is specified. These space estimates must be added to the space estimates for other products that have modules/macros applied in the same DLIBs.

Note: These data sets would already exist if MVS/XA DFP 2.2 was previously installed.

		Estimated Additional DASD Space				
			Tracks			Dir
	Data Set Name	Blocksize	3330	3350	3380	Block
	SYS1.CMDLIB	13030	0	0	4	12
	SYS1.DGTLLIB	6144	150	104	34	26
	SYS1.DGTMLIB	3120	25	17	8	4
	SYS1.DGTPLIB	3120	185	130	115	31
	SYS1.DGTTLIB	3120	19	13	2	1
	SYS1.HELP	12960	3	2	21	4
*	SYS1.IMAGELIB	13030	0	0	16	21
	SYS1.LINKLIB	13030	366	252	76	7
	SYS1.LPALIB	13030	0	0	31	2
	SYS1.MACLIB	12960	314	216	186	13
	SYS1.NUCLEUS	13030	157	108	6	6
	SYS1.PARMLIB	12960	0	0	0	0
	SYS1.PROCLIB	12960	0	0	2	1
	SYS1.SAMPLIB	12960	24	17	18	2
	SYS1.SVCLIB	13030	0	0	1	1

Note * SYS1.IMAGELIB: Refer to "Appendix D. JCL to Update SYS1.IMAGELIB" on page 116 for SYS1.IMAGELIB information.

9.2.1 SMP4: ISMF Target Libraries

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four new target libraries for ISMF. The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the target libraries that you need to allocate. This includes record format, logical record length, block size, total space required (shown both as number of blocks and equivalent number of 3380 tracks), and the number of partitioned data set directory blocks required.

Note: These data sets would already exist if MVS/XA DFP 2.2 was previously installed.

Data Set Name	Execution RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	3350	3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.DGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	34	26
SYS1.DGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	8	4
SYS1.DGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	115	31
SYS1.DGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	2	1

9.3 SMP4: Data Sets

A full complement of SMP data sets are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

Because of the large number of macros distributed with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, a temporary SMPMTS data set should be allocated and used for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. Be sure that the SMPMTS is empty and that all SYSMODS that have SYSGEN macros have been accepted or restored before proceeding. The temporary SMPMTS data set may be deleted following the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

> **Note:** The SYSLIB DD statement in the SMP procedure **must** point to the temporary SMPMTS data set. Refer to "SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 75.

The following table provides an estimate of the additional tracks and directory blocks needed in the SMP4 data sets by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. These estimates must be added to those of any other products being installed to get the total additional space requirement.

Estimated Additional DASD Space

Data Set Name	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	Tracks 3350	Tracks 3380	Dir Block
SYS1.SMPACDS	12960	418	288	120	272
SYS1.SMPACRQ	1680	0	0	0	0
SYS1.SMPCDS	12960	836	575	240	272
SYS1.SMPCRQ	1680	0	0	0	0
SYS1.SMPMTS	12960	2962	2037	850	30
SYS1.SMPPTS	12960	3	2	1	1
SYS1.SMPSCDS	12960	31	22	9	13
SYS1.SMPSTS	12960	0	0	0	0
SMPWRK1	3360	937	654	300	150
SMPWRK2	3360	937	654	300	150
SMPWRK3	3200	930	650	300	150
SMPWRK4	3200	930	650	300	150
SMPWRK5	6144	999	691	300	500
SYSUT1	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT2	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT3	-	234	163	75	-
SYSUT4	-	234	163	75	-
SMPTLIB Files					
HDP2230.F1	6400	46	32	25	4
HDP2230.F2	6400	3917	2709	912	38
HDP2230.F3	6144	578	400	328	309
JDP2325.F1	6400	46	32	78	35

The SMPTLIB data sets are allocated by the receive process. Ensure that there is sufficient space available to allocate all SMPTLIB data sets on a single volume. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 estimates must be added to those of any other products being installed to get the total additional space requirements.

9.4 SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB

The following is an example of the JCL job stream that will update SYS1.PROCLIB with a SMP procedure. Before using this sample procedure, modify it to fit your system's requirements. This SMP procedure is used in subsequent installation steps.

```
//SMPJOB   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//        EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD  DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD  DATA
./ ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//* SAMPLE PROCEDURE CONTAINING JCL TO INSTALL MVS/XA DFP *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPJOB   PROC
//SMP      EXEC PGM=HMASMP,REGION=4096K,PARM='DATE=U'
//STEPCAT  DD DSN=USERCAT,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  SMP SYSOUT DATA SETS
//*
//SMPLIST  DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPOUT   DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPRPT   DD SYSOUT=A
//*
//*  UTILITY WORK FILES FOR SMP4
//*
//SYSUT1   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT2   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT3   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT4   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//*
//*  REQUIRED SMP4 WORK FILES
//*
//SMPWRK1  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK2  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK3  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK4  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK5  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,500)),
//         DCB=(RECFM=U,BLKSIZE=6144)
//*
//*  TARGET LIBRARIES
//*
//CMDLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.CMDLIB,DISP=SHR
//DGTLLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTLLIB,DISP=SHR
//DGTMLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTMLIB,DISP=SHR
//DGTPLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTPLIB,DISP=SHR
//DGTTLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTTLIB,DISP=SHR
//HELP     DD DSN=SYS1.HELP,DISP=SHR
//IMAGELIB DD DSN=SYS1.IMAGELIB,DISP=SHR
//LINKLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//LPALIB   DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR
//MACLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//NUCLEUS  DD DSN=SYS1.NUCLEUS,DISP=SHR
//PARMLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB,DISP=SHR
//PROCLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//SAMPLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.SAMPLIB,DISP=SHR
//SBLSCLIO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSCLIO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSKELO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSKELO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSMSGO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSKELO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSPNLO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSKELO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSTBLO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSTBLO,DISP=SHR
//SVCLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.SVCLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  DISTRIBUTION LIBRARIES (DLIBS)
//*
//ABLSCLIO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSCLIO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSKELO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSKELO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSMSGO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSMSGO,DISP=SHR
```

```
//ABLSPNLO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSPNLO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSTBLO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSTBLO,DISP=SHR
//ACMDLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.ACMDLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTLLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTLLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTMLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTMLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTPLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTPLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTTLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTTLIB,DISP=SHR
//AGENLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.AGENLIB,DISP=SHR
//AHELP    DD DSN=SYS1.AHELP,DISP=SHR
//AIMAGE   DD DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE,DISP=SHR
//ALINKLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ALINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//ALPALIB  DD DSN=SYS1.ALPALIB,DISP=SHR
//AMACLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.AMACLIB,DISP=SHR
//AMODGEN  DD DSN=SYS1.AMODGEN,DISP=SHR
//ANUCLEUS DD DSN=SYS1.ANUCLEUS,DISP=SHR
//AOSA0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSA0,DISP=SHR
//AOSA1    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSA1,DISP=SHR
//AOSB3    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSB3,DISP=SHR
//AOSCA    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCA,DISP=SHR
//AOSCD    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCD,DISP=SHR
//AOSCE    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCE,DISP=SHR
//AOSC2    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC2,DISP=SHR
//AOSC5    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC5,DISP=SHR
//AOSC6    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC6,DISP=SHR
//AOSD0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD0,DISP=SHR
//AOSD7    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD7,DISP=SHR
//AOSD8    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD8,DISP=SHR
//AOSU0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSU0,DISP=SHR
//AOS04    DD DSN=SYS1.AOS04,DISP=SHR
//AOS05    DD DSN=SYS1.AOS05,DISP=SHR
//AOS12    DD DSN=SYS1.AOS12,DISP=SHR
//ATSOMAC  DD DSN=SYS1.ATSOMAC,DISP=SHR
//APARMLIB DD DSN=SYS1.APARMLIB,DISP=SHR
//APROCLIB DD DSN=SYS1.APROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//ASAMPLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ASAMPLIB,DISP=SHR
//CIPLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.CIPLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  MACRO LIBRARIES FOR SMP4 INVOKED ASSEMBLIES
//*
//SYSLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPMTS,DISP=SHR
//         DD DSN=SYS1.AMACLIB,DISP=SHR
//         DD DSN=SYS1.AMODGEN,DISP=SHR
//         DD DSN=SYS1.AGENLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  SMP PERMANENT DATA SETS
//*
//SMPACDS  DD DSN=SYS1.SMPACDS,DISP=SHR
//SMPACRQ  DD DSN=SYS1.SMPACRQ,DISP=SHR
//SMPCDS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPCDS,DISP=SHR
//SMPCRQ   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPCRQ,DISP=SHR
//SMPLOG   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPLOG,DISP=MOD
//SMPPTS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPPTS,DISP=SHR
//SMPSCDS  DD DSN=SYS1.SMPSCDS,DISP=SHR
//SMPSTS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPSTS,DISP=SHR
//SMPMTS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPMTS,DISP=SHR
./       ENDUP
/*
```

Note: A region of at least 4096K is required for the accept of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The actual amount of storage required depends on the number of SYSMODs processed.

9.5 SMP4: Update the SMPPTS System Entry

The following subentries in the member SYSTEM in the copied SMPPTS data set must be updated before beginning steps "SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)" on page 78.

Sample JCL to update the DSSPACE and PEMAX fields in the member SYSTEM follows. The job executes the SMP procedure created in "SMP4: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 75.

```
//PTSSYS   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*           UPDATE THE SMPPTS SYSTEM ENTRY                    *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  UCLIN PTS .
  REP SYS
  ASMNAME(IEV90)
  LKEDNAME(HEWLH096)
  LKEDPARM(LIST,LET,SIZE=(1526K,96K),NCAL,XREF)
  LKEDRC(8)
  DSSPACE(500,500,750)
  PEMAX(7500) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Notes:

Note: The assembler should be installed on the installing system before this entry is updated.

1. **LKEDNAME** - indicates the name of the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. Assign the name HEWLH096 to ensure that the MVS/XA or MVS/370 DFP linkage editor is loaded and used during the installation process.
2. **DSSPACE** - this subentry of the PTS system entry specifies the number of primary tracks, the number of secondary tracks, and the number of directory blocks that are needed for each STMPTLIB data set in order to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.2.0

9.6 SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)

The following is sample JCL to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. In this step the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 code, organized as unloaded partitioned data sets, is loaded into SMPTLIB data sets.

```
//RCVEFCTN JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*        RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325)           *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DSN=SMPMCS,DISP=(OLD,PASS),VOL=SER=DP2230,
//  UNIT=(TAPE,,DEFER),LABEL=(,SL)
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  RECEIVE.
/*
```

Note: Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

9.7 SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to receive any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on a separate tape that accompanied the product tapes and recommended service in the PSP upgrade. If no additional PTFs were shipped on a separate tape, skip this step.

```
//RCVEPTFS JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*             RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS                   *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DSN=SMPMCS,DISP=(OLD,PASS),LABEL=(,NL),
//  VOL=SER=DFPPTF,UNIT=(TAPE,,DEFER),
//  DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=7200)
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  RECEIVE.
/*
```

9.8 SMP4: Execute MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Cleanup Jobs

Certain modules need to be deleted or link-edited due to the restructure of system load modules. In order to do this the jobs DFPCLN04 and DFPCLN05 can be obtained from the SMPTLIBs as members of the partitioned data set prefix.HDP2230.F2 which is created during the receive process of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The high level qualifier of this data set name depends on the DSPREFIX value, if any, specified in the SMPPTS SYSTEM entry. Run this job after modifying it to meet your system's requirements. The contents of DFPCLN04 and DFPCLN05 are listed in Appendix E on "Appendix E. DFP Cleanup Jobs" on page 121.

9.9 SMP4: MVS/SP 2.2.0 Cleanup Jobs

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

9.10 SMP4: RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2

The following is sample JCL to delete functions replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. During processing, the functions deleted by DELDFP2 (and all dependent functions) will be removed from the SMPCDS and SMPACDS data sets and their modules and macros will be deleted from the distribution and target libraries. Failure to execute this job will cause many modules to be not selected during the apply process because SMPCDS LMOD entries created during JCLIN processing would be deleted during apply time.

This job can be gotten from the SMPTLIBs as member DFPCLN10 of the partitioned data set prefix.HDP2230.F2 which is created during the receive process of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The hihg-level qualifier of this data set name depends on the DSPREFIX value, if any, specified in the SMPPTS system entry. Run this job after modifying it to meet your system's requirements.

```
//DFPCLN10 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE FUNCTIONS REPLACED BY
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, AND SHOULD BE RUN BEFORE IT IS ACCEPTED.
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP4 USER WHO IS INSTALLING
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 ONTO AN EXISTING MVS/XA SYSTEM. THIS JOB
//* SHOULD BE RUN AFTER JOBS DFPCLN04 AND DFPCLN05 HAVE BEEN
//* EXECUTED. THIS JOB ASSUMES A PROCEDURE NAMED "SMP4" EXISTS
//* WITH ALL THE NECESSARY DATA DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED.
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
```

```
//STEP1   EXEC SMP4
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)  DELETE(HDP1102,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,
                    HDP2210,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222) .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  RECEIVE S(DELDFP2) .
  APPLY  S(DELDFP2) DIS(WRITE) .
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) DIS(WRITE) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Expect message HMA3971 SYSMOD DELDFP2 HAS NO ELEMENTS.
2. After executing this step, you may want to reclaim the DASD space that was released in the SMPCDS and SMPACDS data sets.

9.11 SMP4: ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

After MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 has been received, use the following sample JCL to check for any PTFs required for the installation of MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0. Receive the required PTFs as needed. Should the required PTFs be superseded by a higher level PTF, the superseding PTF number will have to be explicitly indicated for the SMP control statements as shown in the following example.

```
//ACCEPTC  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          ACCEPT CHECK NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0              *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  ACCEPT G(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZooooo,...)
         DIS(WRITE)
         NOAPPLY BYPASS(ID,PRE,REQ,IFREQ) CHECK .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.

9.12 SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

After all the needed PTFs have been received and checked, use the following sample JCL to accept the modules and macros into the DLIBs from the temporary SMPTLIB data sets. Using COMPRESS(ALL), SMP will compress the libraries, and then copy the new modules and macros into the DLIBs. When completed, SMP will update the SMPACDS data set.

```
//ACCEPTN  JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*            ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  ACCEPT   G(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZooooo,...)
           DIS(WRITE) COMPRESS(ALL) NOAPPLY .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.

9.13 SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to ACCEPT NOAPPLY any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on the Cumulative Service Tape and recommended service in the PSP received in " SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs". If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step. The sample JCL will accept *ALL* SYSMODs received that have not already been accepted.

```
//ACEPTPTF JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS               *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
   ACCEPT DIS(WRITE) NOAPPLY COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Reference documentation accompanying the Cumulative Service Tape for "points of consideration" before installing.
2. Ensure that all products and service required have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.
3. An alternative to accepting all maintenance is to add an SMP SELECT statement to select each PTF received for MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0 except those that may need to be excluded.

9.14 SMP4: ACCEPT MVS/SP Version 2.2.0

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 program directory.

9.15 SMP4: Execute a Stage I SYSGEN

The stage I sysgen process has been changed considerably for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The sysgen statements AFFINITY, CKPTREST, CONSOLE, CTRLPROG, EDIT, EDTGEN, IODEVICE, SCHEDULR, SVCTABLE, TSO and UNITNAME are now obsolete. The specification for including of excluding the full TSO command system and the Mass Storage Subsystem has been added to the DATAMGT statement. SYS1.DCMLIB is no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. The IND, TABLE and UCSDFLT are no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. All parameters on the JES statement are no longer supported. On the GENERATE statement only GENTYPE=ALL is supported. For further details refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148.

Execute a stage I sysgen. Output from the stage I is input to "SMP4: Update SMPCDS with JCLIN".

Note: The SMPMTS should not be used in the SYSLIB concatenation during stage 1 processing.

9.16 SMP4: Update SMPCDS with JCLIN

The following is sample JCL which executes JCLIN to update the SMPCDS data set:

```
//JCLIN    JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              UPDATE SMPCDS WITH JCLIN                       *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPJCLIN DD  <see NOTE below>
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  JCLIN .
/*
```

Note: The SMPJCLIN data set must be the same one that was used in the SYSPUNCH DD statement in the SYSGEN stage I output.

9.17 SMP4: APPLY CHECK MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is sample JCL to check for any needed PTFs for the APPLY step:

```
//APPLYCH  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              APPLY CHECK MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                   *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  APPLY    G(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZ00000,...)
           DIS(WRITE)
           BYPASS(ID,PRE,IFREQ,REQ) CHECK .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.

9.18 SMP4: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following sample JCL illustrates how to APPLY the modules and macros into the target system from the SMPTLIB data sets. Using COMPRESS(ALL), SMP will compress the libraries, and then copy the new modules and macros from the SMPTLIB data sets. When completed, SMP will update the SMPCDS data set.

```
//APPLYN   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                 APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                      *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  APPLY    G(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZooooo,...)
           DIS(WRITE) COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.

4. Expect numerous IEW0342 messages with a return code of 12 or less in the linkage editor output. This is normal because SMP4 attempts to include the load module which has been deleted.

9.19 SMP4: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to apply any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on the Cumulative Service Tape and recommended service in the PSP received in " SMP4: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 78 and accepted in "SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 81. If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step.

```
//APPLYPTF JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS                    *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  APPLY DIS(WRITE) COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Reference documentation accompanying the Cumulative Service Tape for "points of consideration" before installing.
2. *ALL* PTFs received will be applied.
3. An alternative to applying all maintenance is to add an SMP SELECT statement to select each PTF received for MVS/Extended Architecture DFP 2.3.0 except those that may need to be excluded.

9.20 SMP4: APPLY MVS/SP Version 2.2.0

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

9.21 SMP4: Execute the MVS Configuration Program

Execute the MVS Configuration Program (MVSCP) to define the I/O Configuration. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

9.22 SMP4: Install New IPL Text

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

9.23 SMP4: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from SMPPTS and SMPTLIB

The following is sample JCL to delete the temporary SMP data sets and SMPPTS entries created during the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation:

```
//REJECT   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*    REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 FROM SMPPTS AND SMPTLIB          *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  REJECT S(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZxxxxx,...)
  PURGE .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... should be replaced with the PTF numbers of the PTFs accepted, if any, in "SMP4: ACCEPT NOAPPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 80.

9.24 SMP4: REJECT PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is the sample JCL to reject the PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped in a separate Cumulative Service Tape from the SMPPTS that have been successfully accepted.

```
//REJPTF   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//REJPTFS  EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*           REJECT PTFS FOR MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB DD UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL DD *
  REJECT PURGE .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. *ALL* PTFs and FUNCTIONs successfully accepted will be rejected.

9.25 SMP4: SMPPTS CLEANUP

Because MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is a complete replacement for MVS/XA, you may want to delete MVS/XA V1 FMIDs so that the future (and unneeded) service will not be received for them. The FMIDs that are listed as deleted in the output of the accept of function DELDFP2 (refer to "SMP4: RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2" on page 79) may be deleted from the FMID list in the SMPPTS SYSTEM member. The following is sample JCL to delete FMIDs from the SMPPTS SYSTEM member.

```
//CLEANUP  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMP4
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                    SMPPTS CLEANUP                           *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  UCLIN PTS .
  DEL SYS FMID(DELDFP2,xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,...) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Note: xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,...should be replaced with FMIDs to be deleted.

9.26 SMP4: Update the SYS1.IMAGELIB

If you do not have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, skip this step.

SYS1.SAMPLIB member LCSBUILD contains the JCL necessary to install the 3800-1 library character sets, 3800-3 library character sets, 3800-3 graphic character modification modules, and certain 3800 character arrangement tables in SYS1.IMAGELIB. Refer to "Appendix D. JCL to Update SYS1.IMAGELIB" on page 116 for a description of the LCSBUILD job.

9.27 SMP4: IPL the MVS/XA System

IPL the MVS/XA system and specify CLPA to refresh the link pack area (LPA) with the modules applied.

9.28 SMP4: Making ISMF Available to the TSO User

Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

9.29 SMP4: Installation Verification Procedures (IVP)

Update the parameters in the job streams to meet your installation's requirements. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP), distributed as members DFPX1IVP, DFPX2IVP, DFPX3IVP in SYS1.SAMPLIB, to test the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation.

End of "SMP4: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System"

The following section is for the user

INSTALLING ONTO AN EXISTING MVS/XA DFP SYSTEM USING SMP/E

10.0 SMP/E: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System

SMP/E: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System Installation Steps

This section assumes that MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is being applied to an existing MVS/XA DFP target system (base level functions FMIDs HDP1102 or HDP2210 installed; dependent level functions such as FMIDs JDP1110, JDP1111 or JDP2220, JDP2221 may also have been installed) using SMP/E.

Because this section uses the Stage 1 sysgen process to create JCLIN that is used in a subsequent APPLY step, all SYSMODs with SYSGEN support that have been applied must also be accepted or restored prior to executing a Stage 1 sysgen. Failure to do this may result in service level regression..

Refer to System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E) Reference, SC28-1107, for information regarding the use of SMP/E. regarding the use of SMP/E.

In the installation steps that follow, it is assumed that the installation will take place on copies of existing target, DLIBs, and SMP/E data sets.

SMP/E: Installation Procedure Overview

During the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, the SMP/E APPLY and ACCEPT steps will require a significant amount of DASD space.

To help avoid reruns and to provide recovery capability, you should:

- Ensure that all required data sets are defined in the SMP/E procedure.
- Carefully analyze the DASD space requirements of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
- Use copies of the target, SMP/E, and DLIB data sets.

The following steps are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 using SMP/E. Each step is discussed in detail in this section.

1. Review distribution library data set requirements. *See "SMP/E: Distribution Libraries" on page 90*
2. Review system data set requirements. Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148.
3. Review SMP/E data set requirements. *See " SMP/E: Data Sets" on page 92*
4. Update the SMP/E procedure in your system SYS1.PROCLIB. *See "SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 93*
5. Update the OPTIONS entry in the global zone. *See "SMP/E: Update UTILITY/OPTIONS Entry in the Global Zone" on page 95*
6. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. into temporary libraries (SMPTLIBs). *See "SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325))" on page 95*
7. RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP/E: RECEIVE the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 96*
8. RECEIVE MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.
9. Execute cleanup job to relink or delete restructured load modules for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: MVS/SP 2.2.0 Cleanup Jobs" on page 97*

10. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory concerning the MVS/SP 2.2.0 cleanup jobs.

11. RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT the function DELDFP2 to delete the modules and macros that will be replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2" on page 97*

12. ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 98*

13. ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 *See "SMP/E: ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 98*

14. ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP/E: ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 99*

15. ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

    Note: Ensure that all products and service required for the SYSGEN have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.

16. Execute a stage I SYSGEN. *See "SMP/E: Execute a Stage I SYSGEN" on page 100*

17. Execute JCLIN using stage I output to update the target zone. *See "SMP/E: Update the Target Zone with JCLIN" on page 100*

18. APPLY CHECK for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: APPLY CHECK MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 100*

19. APPLY for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. *See "SMP/E: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0" on page 101*

20. APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs, if any. *See "SMP/E: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 102*

21. APPLY for MVS/SP 2.2.0. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

22. Execute the MVS Configuration Program (MVSCP) to define the I/O configuration to MVS/XA. Refer to MVS/SP Program Directory. *See "SMP/E: Execute the MVS Configuration Program" on page 102*

23. Install New IPL Text. Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

24. REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the global zone and SMPTLIB. *See "SMP/E: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the Global Zone and SMPTLIB" on page 103*

25. Execute a global zone cleanup. *See "Global Zone Cleanup" on page 104*

26. If you have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, install library character sets, graphic character modification modules, and character arrangement tables.

27. IPL the MVS/XA system. *See "SMP/E: IPL the MVS/XA System" on page 105*

28. Make ISMF available to the TSO user. Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

29. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP). Refer to MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for instructions on executing the IVP associated with that product. *See "SMP/E: Installation Verification Procedures (IVP)" on page 105*

10.1 SMP/E: Distribution Libraries

The following table contains a list of the distribution libraries required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The space allocation is an estimate of the **additional** tracks and directory blocks required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 when COMPRESS is specified for SMP accept processing. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 DFP estimates must be added to those of other products being accepted that have modules in the same DLIBs.

			Estimated Additional DASD Space			
			Tracks			Dir
	Data Set Name	Blocksize	3330	3350	3380	Block
	SYS1.ACMDLIB	6144	0	0	5	6
	SYS1.ADGTLLIB	6144	150	104	44	47
	SYS1.ADGTMLIB	3120	25	17	5	4
	SYS1.ADGTPLIB	3120	371	259	58	31
	SYS1.ADGTTLIB	3120	19	13	1	1
	SYS1.AGENLIB	12960	14	10	28	7
	SYS1.AHELP	6480	0	0	9	4
*	SYS1.AIMAGE	12960	2614	1798	625	14
	SYS1.ALINKLIB	6144	10	7	3	2
	SYS1.ALPALIB	6144	3	2	2	2
	SYS1.AMACLIB	12960	0	0	92	13
	SYS1.AMODGEN	12960	10	7	44	4
	SYS1.ANUCLEUS	6144	50	35	3	3
	SYS1.AOSA0	6144	17	12	56	46
	SYS1.AOSA1	6144	0	0	1	1
	SYS1.AOSB3	6144	0	0	2	1
	SYS1.AOSCA	6144	0	0	2	3
	SYS1.AOSC2	6144	0	0	1	1
	SYS1.AOSC5	6144	3	2	11	11
	SYS1.AOSC6	6144	3	2	8	7
	SYS1.AOSD0	6144	3	2	76	101
	SYS1.AOSD7	6144	0	0	6	7
	SYS1.AOSD8	6144	0	0	16	20
	SYS1.AOSU0	6144	0	0	77	47
	SYS1.AOS04	6144	0	0	6	4
	SYS1.AOS05	6144	0	0	2	2
	SYS1.AOS12	6144	0	0	4	4
	SYS1.APROCLIB	800	0	0	1	2
	SYS1.ASAMPLIB	1680	0	0	11	2
	SYS1.ATSOMAC	12960	0	0	4	2
	SYS1.CIPLIB	6144	0	0	6	6

Note * SYS1.AIMAGE: Users who previously had installed MVS/XA DFP 1.2.0 or higher will not need to increase the size of SYS1.AIMAGE.

10.1.1 SMP/E: Considerations when Allocating SYS1.ANUCLEUS

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires a new distribution library. This library should be allocated as a PDS with BLKSIZE = 6144 and RECFM = U.

10.1.2 SMP/E: ISMF Distribution Data Sets

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four distribution libraries. The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the DLIBs that you need to allocate, including record format, logical record length, block size, total space required, and the number of PDS directory blocks required. You may want to allocate more space than shown to allow room for future expansion.

Note: These data sets would already exist if MVS/XA DFP 2.2 was previously installed.

Execution Data Set Name	RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	3350	3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.ADGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	44	47
SYS1.ADGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	5	4
SYS1.ADGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	58	31
SYS1.ADGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	1	1

10.2 SMP/E: Target Libraries

Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for information on the MVS/XA target libraries.

The following table identifies the target libraries required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The space allocation is an estimate of the **additional** tracks and directory blocks required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 when COMPRESS is specified for SMP apply processing. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 estimates must be added to those of other products being applied that have modules/macros in the same target libraries.

Note: These data sets would already exist if MVS/XA DFP 2.2 was previously installed.

		Estimated Additional DASD Space				
			Tracks			Dir
	Data Set Name	Blocksize	3330	3350	3380	Block
	SYS1.CMDLIB	13030	0	0	4	12
	SYS1.DGTLLIB	6144	150	104	34	26
	SYS1.DGTMLIB	3120	25	17	8	4
	SYS1.DGTPLIB	3120	185	130	115	31
	SYS1.DGTTLIB	3120	19	13	2	1
	SYS1.HELP	12960	28	19	21	4
*	SYS1.IMAGELIB	13030	0	0	16	21
	SYS1.LINKLIB	13030	52	36	76	7
	SYS1.LPALIB	13030	0	0	31	2
	SYS1.MACLIB	12960	314	216	186	13
	SYS1.NUCLEUS	13030	157	108	6	8
	SYS1.PARMLIB	12960	0	0	0	0
	SYS1.PROCLIB	12960	0	0	2	1
	SYS1.SAMPLIB	12960	24	17	18	2
	SYS1.SVCLIB	13030	0	0	1	1

Note * SYS1.IMAGELIB: Refer to "Appendix D. JCL to Update SYS1.IMAGELIB" on page 116 for SYS1.IMAGELIB information.

10.2.1 SMP/E: ISMF Target Libraries

MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 requires four new target libraries for ISMF. The following figure shows the allocation parameters for the target libraries that you need to allocate. This includes record format, logical record length, block size, total space required (shown both as number of blocks and equivalent number of 3380 tracks), and the number of partitioned data set directory blocks required.

Note: These data sets would already exist if MVS/XA DFP 2.2 was previously installed.

Data Set Name	RECFM	LRECL	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	3350	3380	PDS Dir Blocks
SYS1.DGTLLIB	U	N/A	6144	150	104	34	26
SYS1.DGTMLIB	FB	80	3120	25	17	8	4
SYS1.DGTPLIB	FB	80	3120	371	259	115	31
SYS1.DGTTLIB	FB	80	3120	19	13	2	1

10.3 SMP/E: Data Sets

A full complement of SMP data sets are required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

Because of the large number of macros distributed with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, a temporary SMPMTS data set should be allocated and used for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. Be sure that the SMPMTS is empty and that all SYSMODS that have SYSGEN macros have been accepted or restored before proceeding. The temporary SMPMTS data set may be deleted following the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

> Note: The SYSLIB DD statement in the SMP procedure **must** point to the temporary SMPMTS data set. Refer to "SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 93.

The following table provides an estimate of the additional tracks and directory blocks needed in the SMP/E data sets by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. These estimates must be added to those of any other products being installed to get the total additional space requirement.

			Estimated Additional DASD Space			
	Data Set Name	Blocksize	Tracks 3330	3350	3380	Dir Block
*	SMPCSI					
	SMPMTS	12960	7271	5000	2086	30
	SMPSCDS	12960	3	22	9	13
	SMPPTS	12960	3	2	1	1
	SMPSTS	12960	0	0	0	0
	SMPWRK1	3360	937	654	300	150
	SMPWRK2	3360	937	654	300	150
	SMPWRK3	3200	930	650	300	150
	SMPWRK4	3200	930	650	300	150
	SMPWRK5	6144	999	691	300	500
	SYSUT1	-	234	163	75	-
	SYSUT2	-	234	163	75	-
	SYSUT3	-	234	163	75	-
	SYSUT4	-	234	163	75	-
	SMPTLIB Files					
	HDP2230.F1	6400	46	32	25	4
	HDP2230.F2	6400	3917	2709	912	38
	HDP2230.F3	6144	578	400	328	309
	JDP2325.F1	6400	46	32	78	35

Note * SMPCSI: To define the SMP/E VSAM data set SMPCSI, refer to Installing System Modification Program Extended, SC33-0130.

The SMPTLIB data sets are allocated by the receive process. Ensure that there is sufficient space available to allocate all SMPTLIB data sets on a single volume. The MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 estimates must be added to those of any other products being installed to get the total additional space requirement.

10.4 SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB

The following is an example of the JCL job stream that will update SYS1.PROCLIB with a SMP/E procedure. Before using this sample procedure, modify it to fit your system's requirements. This SMP/E procedure is used in subsequent installation steps.

```
//SMPEJOB  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//         EXEC  PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD  DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD  DATA
./ ADD LIST=ALL,NAME=SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//* SAMPLE PROCEDURE CONTAINING JCL TO INSTALL MVS/XA DFP *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPEPROC PROC
//SMPE     EXEC PGM=GIMSMP,REGION=4096K,PARM='DATE=U'
//STEPCAT  DD DSN=USERCAT,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  SMP SYSOUT DATA SETS
//*
//SMPLIST  DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPOUT   DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPRPT   DD SYSOUT=A
//*
//*  UTILITY WORK FILES FOR SMP/E
//*
//SYSUT1   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT2   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT3   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//SYSUT4   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,5)),DISP=(,DELETE)
//*
//*  REQUIRED SMP/E WORK FILES
//*
//SMPWRK1  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK2  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3360,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK3  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK4  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,150)),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         DISP=(,DELETE)
//SMPWRK5  DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(20,5,500)),
//         DCB=(RECFM=U,BLKSIZE=6144)
//*
//*  TARGET LIBRARIES
//*
//CMDLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.CMDLIB,DISP=SHR
//DGTLLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTLLIB,DISP=SHR
//DGTMLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTMLIB,DISP=SHR
//DGTPLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTPLIB,DISP=SHR
```

```
//DGTTLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.DGTTLIB,DISP=SHR
//HELP     DD DSN=SYS1.HELP,DISP=SHR
//IMAGELIB DD DSN=SYS1.IMAGELIB,DISP=SHR
//LINKLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//LPALIB   DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR
//MACLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//NUCLEUS  DD DSN=SYS1.NUCLEUS,DISP=SHR
//PARMLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB,DISP=SHR
//PROCLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//SAMPLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.SAMPLIB,DISP=SHR
//SBLSCLIO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSCLIO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSKELO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSKELO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSMSGO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSMSGO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSPNLO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSPNLO,DISP=SHR
//SBLSTBLO DD DSN=SYS1.SBLSTBLO,DISP=SHR
//SVCLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.SVCLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  DISTRIBUTION LIBRARIES (DLIBS)
//*
//ABLSCLIO DD DSN=SYS1.ASBLSCLIO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSKELO DD DSN=SYS1.ASBLSKELO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSMSGO DD DSN=SYS1.ASBLSMSGO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSPNLO DD DSN=SYS1.ASBLSPNLO,DISP=SHR
//ABLSTBLO DD DSN=SYS1.ABLSTBLO,DISP=SHR
//ACMDLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.ACMDLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTLLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTLLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTMLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTMLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTPLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTPLIB,DISP=SHR
//ADGTTLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ADGTTLIB,DISP=SHR
//AGENLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.AGENLIB,DISP=SHR
//AHELP    DD DSN=SYS1.AHELP,DISP=SHR
//AIMAGE   DD DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE,DISP=SHR
//ALINKLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ALINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//ALPALIB  DD DSN=SYS1.ALPALIB,DISP=SHR
//AMACLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.AMACLIB,DISP=SHR
//AMODGEN  DD DSN=SYS1.AMODGEN,DISP=SHR
//ANUCLEUS DD DSN=SYS1.ANUCLEUS,DISP=SHR
//AOSA0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSA0,DISP=SHR
//AOSA1    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSA1,DISP=SHR
//AOSB3    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSB3,DISP=SHR
//AOSCA    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCA,DISP=SHR
//AOSCD    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCD,DISP=SHR
//AOSCE    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSCE,DISP=SHR
//AOSC2    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC2,DISP=SHR
//AOSC5    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC5,DISP=SHR
//AOSC6    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSC6,DISP=SHR
//AOSD0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD0,DISP=SHR
//AOSD7    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD7,DISP=SHR
//AOSD8    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSD8,DISP=SHR
//AOSU0    DD DSN=SYS1.AOSU0,DISP=SHR
//AOS04    DD DSN=SYS1.AOS04,DISP=SHR
//AOS05    DD DSN=SYS1.AOS05,DISP=SHR
//AOS12    DD DSN=SYS1.AOS12,DISP=SHR
//ATSOMAC  DD DSN=SYS1.ATSOMAC,DISP=SHR
//APARMLIB DD DSN=SYS1.APARMLIB,DISP=SHR
//APROCLIB DD DSN=SYS1.APROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//ASAMPLIB DD DSN=SYS1.ASAMPLIB,DISP=SHR
//CIPLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.CIPLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  MACRO LIBRARIES FOR SMP/E INVOKED ASSEMBLIES
//*
//SYSLIB   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPMTS,DISP=SHR
//         DD DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//         DD DSN=SYS1.AMODGEN,DISP=SHR
//         DD DSN=SYS1.AGENLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//*  SMP PERMANENT DATA SETS
//*
//SMPCSI   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPE.CSI,DISP=SHR
//SMPLOG   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPLOG,DISP=MOD
//SMPPTS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPPTS,DISP=SHR
//SMPSCDS  DD DSN=SYS1.SMPSCDS,DISP=SHR
```

```
//SMPSTS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPSTS,DISP=SHR
//SMPMTS   DD DSN=SYS1.SMPMTS,DISP=SHR
./        ENDUP
/*
```

Notes:

1. A region of at least 4096K is required for the apply and accept of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The actual amount of storage required depends on the number of SYSMODs processed.
2. SYS1.SMPMTS must be first in the SYSLIB concatenation and have the largest blocksize.

10.5 SMP/E: Update UTILITY/OPTIONS Entry in the Global Zone

Sample JCL to update these fields in the UTILITY/OPTIONS entries follows. The job executes the SMP/E procedure created in "SMP/E: Update SYS1.PROCLIB" on page 93.

```
//CSIOPT   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*   UPDATE UTILITY/OPTIONS ENTRY IN THE GLOBAL ZONE           *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  UCLIN .
  REP OPTIONS(optname)
  LKED(LKEDUTIL) PEMAX(7500) DSSPACE(500,500,750) .
  REP UTILITY(LKEDUTIL) NAME(HEWLH096)
      PARM(LIST,LET,SIZE=(1526K,96K),NCAL,XREF) RC(8) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Notes:

1. optname - this is the OPTIONS entry name. You may update a current entry name or create a new entry name. You must ensure that the default OPTIONS name in each zone contains this entry name.
2. LKEDUTIL NAME - indicates the name of the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 linkage editor. Assign the name HEWLH096 to ensure that the MVS/XA or MVS/370 DFP linkage editor is loaded and used during the installation process.

   Note: Previously used linkage editor names and aliases are valid as aliases for HEWLH096 after the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 system has been installed, but do not guarantee that the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 version of the linkage editor will be loaded during the installation process.
3. DSSPACE - this subentry of the PTS system entry specifies the number of primary tracks, the number of secondary tracks, and the number of directory blocks that are needed for each SMPTLIB data set in order to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

10.6 SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230,JDP2325))

The following is sample JCL to receive MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. In this step all the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 code, organized as unloaded partitioned data sets, is loaded into SMPTLIB data sets.

```
//RCVEFCTN JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          RECEIVE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 (HDP2230)                 *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DSN=SMPMCS,DISP=(OLD,PASS),VOL=SER=DP2230,
//  UNIT=(TAPE,,DEFER),LABEL=(,SL)
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  RECEIVE S(HDP2230,JDP2325) LIST SYSMODS .
/*
```

Note: Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

10.7 SMP/E: RECEIVE the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to receive any PTFs and HOLDDATA for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on a separate tape that accompanied the product tapes and recommended service in the PSP. If no additional PTFs were shipped on a separate tape, skip this step.

```
//RCVEPTFS JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*           RECEIVE THE MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFS                 *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPPTFIN DD  DISP=(SHR,PASS),
//  VOL=(PRIVATE,RETAIN,SER=DFPPTF),
//  UNIT=TAPE,
//  LABEL=(1,NL),
//  DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=32720),
//  DSN=SMPPTFIN
//SMPHOLD  DD  DISP=(SHR,PASS),
//  VOL=(PRIVATE,RETAIN,SER=DFPPTF),
//  UNIT=TAPE,
//  LABEL=(4,NL),
//  DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=32720),
//  DSN=SMPHOLD
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  RECEIVE LIST SOURCEID(xxxxxxx) .
/*
```

Note: Replace xxxxxxx with a unique user defined name to assign a common identifier to the SYSMODs received.

10.8 SMP/E: RECEIVE MVS/SP 2.2.0

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

10.9 SMP/E: Execute MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 Cleanup Jobs

Certain modules need to be deleted or link-edited due to the restructure of system load modules. In order to do this the job DFPCLN06 can be obtained from the SMPTLIBs as a member of the partitioned data set prefix.HDP2230.F2 which is created during the receive process of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The high level qualifier of this data set name depends on the DSPREFIX value, if any, specified in the OPTIONS entry. Run this job after modifying it to meet your system's require-

ments. The contents of DFPCLN06 is listed in Appendix E on "Appendix E. DFP Cleanup Jobs" on page 121.

10.10 SMP/E: MVS/SP 2.2.0 Cleanup Jobs

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory for the MVS/SP Cleanup jobs.

10.11 SMP/E: RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2

The following is sample JCL to delete functions replaced by MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. During processing, the functions deleted by DELDFP2 (and all dependent level functions) will be removed from the target zone and the distribution zone and their modules and macros will be deleted from the target and the distribution libraries. This job can be obtained from the SMPTLIBs as member DFPCLN07 of the partitioned data set prefix.HDP2230.F2.

```
//DFPCLN07 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE THE PREVIOUS LEVEL
//* OF MVS/XA DFP AND PROVIDE UCLIN FOR A RESTRUCTURED
//* LOAD MODULE. THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP/E USER
//* INSTALLING MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 ON AN EXISTING MVS/XA SYSTEM.
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN AFTER DFPCLN06 AND BEFORE THE
//* INSTALLATION OF MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 . THIS JOB ASSUMES A
//* PROCEDURE NAMED "SMPE" EXISTS WITH ALL THE NECESSARY DATA
//* DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED .
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP1   EXEC SMPE
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)  DELETE(HDP1102,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,
                   HDP2210,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222) .
++MOD(IECZDTAB) DISTLIB(SYSPUNCH) DELETE .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  RECEIVE LIST SYSMODS .
  SET BDY(tgtzone) . /* change boundary to your target zone */
  UCLIN .
  REP MOD(IDATMSTP) LMOD( ) .
  ENDUCL .
  APPLY S(DELDFP2) BYPASS(ID) .
  SET BDY(dlbzone) . /* change boundary to your */
                     /* distribution zone       */
  UCLIN .
  REP MOD(IDATMSTP) LMOD( ) .
  ENDUCL .
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Expect message GIM3971 SYSMOD DELDFP2 HAS NO ELEMENTS.
2. Expect return codes 12 or less from the linkage editor and modules marked NOT EXECUTABLE. This is normal for SMP DELETE processing. The return code from SMP however should be a 4.
3. After executing this step, you may want to reclaim the DASD space that was released in the SMPCSI data set.

4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.

5. tgtzone is the name of your target zone.

10.12 SMP/E: ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is sample JCL used to check for any PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. RECEIVE the required PTFs as needed. Should the required PTFs be superseded by a higher level PTF, the superseding PTF number will have to be explicitly indicated for the SMP control statements as shown in the following example.

```
//ACCEPTCK JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*    ACCEPT CHECK BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0    *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .
  ACCEPT CHECK S(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZooooo,...)
         BYPASS(APPLYCHECK,ID,PRE,REQ,IFREQ) GROUP .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.

2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.

4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.

5. System holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.

6. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

10.13 SMP/E: ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

Once MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 has been received and checked, use the following sample JCL to accept the modules and macros into the DLIBs from the temporary SMPTLIB data sets. SMP/E will delete all modules and macros which are to be replaced in the DLIBs, compress the libraries, and copy or link-edit the new modules and macros.

```
//ACCEPT   JOB   <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC  SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*        ACCEPT BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0           *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .
  ACCEPT S(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZoooox,...)
         BYPASS(APPLYCHECK)
         GROUP COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.
4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.
5. System holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.
6. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

10.14 SMP/E: ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to accept any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on the Cumulative Service Tape and recommended service in the PSP received in "SMP/E: RECEIVE the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs". If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step.

```
//ACEPTPTF JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs                   *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .
  ACCEPT SOURCEID(xxxxxxx)
         BYPASS(APPLYCHECK)
         COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Reference documentation accompanying the Cumulative Service Tape for "points of consideration" before installing.
2. Replace xxxxxxx with the user defined name for SYSMODs received.
3. Ensure that all products and service required for the SYSGEN have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.
4. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.
5. System holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.
6. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

10.15 SMP/E: ACCEPT MVS/SP Version 2.2.0

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory to accept it.

Note: Ensure that all products and service required for the SYSGEN have been accepted successfully before proceeding to the next step.

10.16 SMP/E: Execute a Stage I SYSGEN

The stage I sysgen process has bee changed considerably for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The sysgen statements AFFINITY, CKPTREST, CONSOLE, CTRLPROG, EDIT, EDTGEN, IODEVICE, SCHEDULR, SVCTABLE, TSO, and UNITNAME are now obsolete. The specification for including or excluding the full TSO command system and the Mass Storage Subsystem has been added to the DATAMGT statement. SYS1.DCMLIB is no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. The IND, TABLE, and UCSDFLT are no longer supported on the DATAMGT statement. All parameters on the JES statement are no longer supported. On the GENERATE statement only GENTYPE=ALL is supported. For further details refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148.

Execute a stage I sysgen. Output from the stage I is input to "SMPE: Update the Target Zone with JCLIN".

Note: The SMPMTS should not be used in the SYSLIB concatenation during stage 1 processing.

10.17 SMP/E: Update the Target Zone with JCLIN

The following sample JCL illustrates how to execute JCLIN to update the target zone data set:

```
//JCLIN    JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*          UPDATE THE TARGET ZONE WITH JCLIN                  *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPJCLIN DD  <see NOTE below>
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(tgtzone) .
  JCLIN .
/*
```

Notes:

1. The SMPJCLIN data set must be the same one that was used in the SYSPUNCH DD statement in the SYSGEN stage I output.

2. tgtzone is the name of your target zone.

10.18 SMP/E: APPLY CHECK MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is sample JCL to check for any required PTFs for the APPLY step:

```
//APPLYCH  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*             APPLY CHECK MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                    *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(tgtzone) .
  APPLY S(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZoooox,...) GROUP
        BYPASS(ID,PRE,IFREQ,REQ)
        CHECK .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.
4. tgtzone is the name of your target zone.
5. System holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.
6. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

10.19 SMP/E: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

Use the following sample JCL to apply the modules and macros into the target system from the SMPTLIB data sets. Using COMPRESS(ALL), SMP will compress the libraries, and then copy the new modules and macros from the SMPTLIB data sets. When completed, SMP will update the target zone data set.

```
//APPLYN   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                       *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(tgtzone) .
  APPLY  S(HDP2230,JDP2325,UZoooox,...)
         COMPRESS(ALL) GROUP .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.
3. Refer to "Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages" on page 113.
4. Expect numerous IEW0342 messages with a return code of 8 or less in the linkage editor output. This is normal because SMP/E attempts to include the load module which has been deleted.

5. tgtzone is the name of your target zone.
6. System holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.
7. If installing with SMP/E Release 4, change GROUP to GROUPEXTEND.

10.20 SMP/E: APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs

The following is sample JCL to apply any PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped on the Cumulative Service Tape and recommended service in the PSP received in "SMP/E: RECEIVE the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs" on page 96 and accepted in "SMP/E: ACCEPT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs". If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step.

```
//APPLYPTF JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*              APPLY MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 PTFs                    *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(tgtzone) .
  APPLY SOURCEID(xxxxxxx)
  COMPRESS(ALL) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Reference documentation accompanying the Cumulative Service Tape for "points of consideration" before installing.
2. Replace xxxxxxx with the user defined name for SYSMODs received.
3. tgtzone is the name of your target zone.
4. System holds for PTFs may be bypassed after resolving any actions needed.

10.21 SMP/E: APPLY MVS/SP 2.2.0

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory.

10.22 SMP/E: Execute the MVS Configuration Program

Execute the MVS Configuration Program (MVSCP) to define the I/O configuration. Refer to the MVSCP Guide and Reference.

Note: All MVS/SP 2.2.0 maintenance must be accepted or restored before proceeding with an I/O SYSGEN.

10.23 SMP/E: Install new IPL Text

Refer to the MVS/SP 2.2.0 Program Directory

10.24 SMP/E: REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 from the Global Zone and SMPTLIB

The following is sample JCL to delete the temporary SMP/E data sets and the global zone entries created during the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation:

```
//REJECT   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*REJECT MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 FROM THE GLOBAL ZONE AND SMPPTS      *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPTLIB  DD  UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=nnnnnn
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  REJECT S(HDP2230,JDP2325 ,
  DELDFP2,UZxxxxx,...) COMPRESS(ALL)
  BYPASS(ACCEPTCHECK,APPLYCHECK) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace nnnnnn with the volume serial of the SMPTLIB data sets.
2. UZxxxxx,... must be replaced with the PTF numbers of any superseding PTFs received to satisfy any SMP requirements for excluded PTFs required for the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0.

10.25 SMP/E: REJECT PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0

The following is sample JCL to reject the PTFs for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 that may have been shipped in a separate Cumulative Service Tape from the SMPPTS that have been successfully accepted. If a separate tape was not shipped, skip this step.

```
//REJPTF   JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//REJPTFS  EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*            REJECT PTFS FOR MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0                 *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  REJECT PURGE(dlbzone)
  SOURCEID(xxxxxxx) .
/*
```

Notes:

1. Replace xxxxxxx with the user defined name for SYSMODs received.
2. dlbzone is the name of your distribution zone.

10.26 SMP/E: Cleanup

Because MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 is a complete replacement for MVS/XA DFP V1, you may want to delete MVS/XA DFP V1 FMIDs so that future (and unneeded) service will not be received for them, unless you plan to share the SMPPTS between MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 DFP and MVS/XA DFP V1 systems.

10.26.1 Global Zone Cleanup

The FMIDs that are listed as deleted in the output of the accept of function DELDFP2 (refer to "SMP/E: RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT Function DELDFP2" on page 97) may be deleted from the FMID list in the global zone. The following is sample JCL to delete FMIDs from the global zone.

```
//CLEANUP  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                  GLOBAL ZONE CLEANUP                        *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  UCLIN .
  DEL GLOBALZONE FMID(xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,...) .
  ENDUCL .
/*
```

Note: xxxxxxx,xxxxxxx,...should be replaced with FMIDs to be deleted.

10.26.2 TGTZONE Cleanup

SMP/E Release 3 or SMP/E Release 4 users may use the following JCL to cleanup the SMPMTS, SMPSTS, and SMPSCDS data sets.

```
//CLEANUP  JOB  <Job Card Parameters>
//STEP1    EXEC SMPE
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//*                  TGTZONE CLEANUP                            *
//*-------------------------------------------------------------*
//SMPCNTL  DD  *
  SET BDY(tgtzone) .
  CLEANUP COMPRESS(ALL).
/*
```

10.27 SMP/E: Update the SYS1.IMAGELIB

If you do not have an IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem, skip this step.

SYS1.SAMPLIB member LCSBUILD contains the JCL necessary to install the 3800-1 library character sets, 3800-3 library character sets, 3800-3 graphic character modification modules, and 3800 character arrangement tables in SYS1.IMAGELIB. Refer to "Appendix D. JCL to Update SYS1.IMAGELIB" on page 116 for a description of the LCSBUILD job.

10.28 SMP/E: IPL the MVS/XA System

IPL the MVS/XA system and specify CLPA to refresh the link pack area (LPA) with the modules applied.

10.29 SMP/E: Making ISMF Available to the TSO User

Refer to "Selecting and Defining the System Data Sets" and "Installing ISMF" in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148 for additional ISMF information.

10.30 SMP/E: Installation Verification Procedures (IVP)

Update the parameters in the job streams to meet your installation's requirements. Execute the Installation Verification Procedures (IVP), distributed as members DFPX1IVP, DFPX2IVP, DFPX3IVP in SYS1.SAMPLIB, to test the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installation.

End of "SMP/E: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System"

Appendix A. Contents of Optional Machine-Readable Material Tapes

The modules for MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 are arranged in sequential data sets by component, each formatted as a SYSIN data set for IEBUPDTE. "Total Statements" is the number of 80-byte records in the file, including all comments and blank lines.

The contents of the 1600 BPI optional machine-readable material tapes (feature 7029) for HDP2230 are:

Tape No.	File No.	Component (5665-)	Module/Macro Names First - Last	Number of Modules/ Macros	Total State-ments
1	1	AAPVT	ALL	93	24,179
	2	28401	ALL	3	19,239
	3	28402	ALL	6	32,098
	4	28403	ALL	5	18,133
	5	28404	ALL	1	58
	6	28405	ALL	3	7,775
	7	28406	ALL	5	6,358
	8	28407	ALL	44	28,018
	9	28408	ALL	23	23,413
	10	28409	ALL	5	5,791
	11	28411	ALL	5	6,797
	12	28412	ALL	9	20,813
	13	28413	IEAVNP16-IFG0196M	43	78,834
	14	28413	IFG0196N-SECLOADA	84	68,414
	15	28414	AMDUSRFE-IGG019BX	64	78,053
2	1	28414	IGG019BY-IGG08110	68	78,235
	2	28414	IGG08111-XTB12774	92	62,248
	3	28415	ALL	26	57,034
	4	28416	ALL	40	41,824
	5	28417	ALL	79	76,893
	6	28418	IDACAT11-IGC0002F	14	76,543
	7	28418	IGG0ASIM-IGG0CLAK	11	76,741
3	1	28418	IGG0CLAL-IGG0CLAY	13	76,368
	2	28418	IGG0CLAZ-IGG0CLBA	11	77,669
	3	28418	IGG0CLBB-IGG0CLBM	12	76,282
	4	28418	IGG0CLBN-IGG0CLBY	12	74,744
	5	28418	IGG0CLBZ-IGG0CLCB	13	78,657
	6	28418	IGG0CLCC-IGG0CLEG	13	73,081
4	1	28418	IGG0CLEH-IGG0CLER	10	74,138
	2	28418	IGG0CLES-IGG0CLE1	10	77,711
	3	28418	IGG0CLE2-IGG0CLFC	11	73,653
	4	28418	IGG0CLFE-IGG0CLFM	9	75,406
	5	28418	IGG0CLFN-IGG0CLF3	11	78,065
	6	28418	IGG0CLF4-IGG0CLGD	8	72,999
5	1	28418	IGG0CLHA-IGG0CLXA	11	78,559
	2	28418	IGG0CLXB-IGG026DU	7	54,030
	3	28419	ALL	11	39,024
	4	28420	ALL	1	6,903
	5	28421	ALL	3	2,898
	6	28422	ALL	6	10,806
	7	28423	ALL	15	47,635
	8	28424	ALL	37	49,012
	9	28425	CVAFGTF -ICVFIV02	48	79,996
	10	28425	ICVIXA00-IMDUSRF8	31	33,521
6	1	28426	ALL	2	1,222
	2	28427	ALL	40	55,831
	3	28428	ALL	2	16,858
	4	28429	ALL	9	14,254
	5	28430	IDCAL01 -IDCDA01	31	79,495

	6	28430	IDCDA02 -IDCIO01	13	79,580
	7	28430	IDCIO02 -IDCPM01	11	77,967
	8	28430	IDCPR01 -IDCRM01	13	70,690
	9	28430	IDCRP01 -IDCRS05	6	71,901
7	1	28430	IDCRS06 -IDCTP05	15	78,249
	2	28430	IDCTP06 -IDCXP01	31	47,414
	3	28431	ALL	11	4,903
	4	28434	ALL	116	77,058
	5	28435	ALL	1	2,978
	6	28436	ALL	8	15,346
	7	28437	ALL	4	5,089
	8	28438	ALL	4	2,959
	9	28439	ALL	1	514
	10	28440	ALL	8	5,399
	11	28441	ALL	9	3,349
	12	28442	ALL	7	14,024
	13	28443	ALL	6	4,184
	14	28444	ALL	9	25,966
	15	28446	ALL	23	27,679
	16	28447	ALL	13	7,992
	17	28448	ALL	6	4,036
	18	28449	ALL	1	2,429
	19	28450	ALL	31	40,202
	20	28451	AMDUSRF9-IDA0192D	14	76,879
8	1	28451	IDA0192F-IDA0192Y	11	71,529
	2	28451	IDA0192Z-IDA0557A	8	68,499
	3	28451	IDA0557B-IFG0192A	5	41,237
	4	28452	IDAICIA1-IDA019RQ	24	78,594
	5	28452	IDA019RR-IDA019SM	24	79,115
	6	28452	IDA019SN-IGX00029	12	34,938

The contents of the 6250 BPI optional machine-readable material tapes (features 7031 and 7862) for HDP2230 are:

Tape No.	File No.	Component (5665-)	Number of Module/Macro Names First - Last	Total Modules/ Macros	State-ments
1	1	AAPVT	ALL	93	24,179
	2	28401	ALL	3	19,239
	3	28402	ALL	6	32,098
	4	28403	ALL	5	18,133
	5	28404	ALL	1	58
	6	28405	ALL	3	7,775
	7	28406	ALL	5	6,358
	8	28407	ALL	44	28,018
	9	28408	ALL	23	23,413
	10	28409	ALL	5	5,791
	11	28411	ALL	5	6,797
	12	28412	ALL	9	20,813
	13	28413	IEAVNP16-IFG0196M	43	78,834
	14	28413	IFG0196N-SECLOADA	84	68,414
	15	28414	AMDUSRFE-IGG019BX	64	78,053
	16	28414	IGG019BY-IGG08110	68	78,235
	17	28414	IGG08111-XTB12774	92	62,248
	18	28415	ALL	26	57,034
	19	28416	ALL	40	41,824
	20	28417	ALL	79	76,893
	21	28418	IDACAT11-IGC0002F	14	76,543
	22	28418	IGG0ASIM-IGG0CLAK	11	76,741
	23	28418	IGG0CLAL-IGG0CLAY	13	76,368
	24	28418	IGG0CLAZ-IGG0CLBA	11	77,669
	25	28418	IGG0CLBB-IGG0CLBM	12	76,282
	26	28418	IGG0CLBN-IGG0CLBY	12	74,744
	27	28418	IGG0CLBZ-IGG0CLCB	13	78,657
	28	28418	IGG0CLCC-IGG0CLEG	13	73,081

	29	28418	IGGOCLEH-IGGOCLER	10	74,138
	30	28418	IGGOCLES-IGGOCLE1	10	77,711
	31	28418	IGGOCLE2-IGGOCLFC	11	73,653
	32	28418	IGGOCLFE-IGGOCLFM	9	75,406
	33	28418	IGGOCLFN-IGGOCLF3	11	78,065
2	1	28418	IGGOCLF4-IGGOCLGD	8	72,999
	2	28418	IGGOCLHA-IGGOCLXA	11	78,559
	3	28418	IGGOCLXB-IGG026DU	7	54,030
	4	28419	ALL	11	39,024
	5	28420	ALL	1	6,903
	6	28421	ALL	3	2,898
	7	28422	ALL	6	10,806
	8	28423	ALL	15	47,635
	9	28424	ALL	37	49,012
	10	28425	CVAFGTF -ICVFIV02	48	79,996
	11	28425	ICVIXA00-IMDUSRF8	31	33,521
	12	28426	ALL	2	1,222
	13	28427	ALL	40	55,831
	14	28428	ALL	2	16,858
	15	28429	ALL	9	14,254
	16	28430	IDCAL01 -IDCDA01	31	79,495
	17	28430	IDCDA02 -IDCIO01	13	79,580
	18	28430	IDCIO02 -IDCPM01	11	77,967
	19	28430	IDCPR01 -IDCRM01	13	70,690
	20	28430	IDCRP01 -IDCRS05	6	71,901
	21	28430	IDCRS06 -IDCTP05	15	78,249
	22	28430	IDCTP06 -IDCXP01	31	47,414
	23	28431	ALL	11	4,903
	24	28434	ALL	116	77,058
	25	28435	ALL	1	2,978
	26	28436	ALL	8	15,346
	27	28437	ALL	4	5,089
	28	28438	ALL	4	2,959
	29	28439	ALL	1	514
	30	28440	ALL	8	5,399
	31	28441	ALL	9	3,349
	32	28442	ALL	7	14,024
	33	28443	ALL	6	4,184
	34	28444	ALL	9	25,966
	35	28446	ALL	23	27,679
	36	28447	ALL	13	7,992
	37	28448	ALL	6	4,036
	38	28449	ALL	1	2,429
	39	28450	ALL	31	40,202
	40	28451	AMDUSRF9-IDA0192D	14	76,879
	41	28451	IDA0192F-IDA0192Y	11	71,529
	42	28451	IDA0192Z-IDA0557A	8	68,499
	43	28451	IDA0557B-IFG0192A	5	41,237
	44	28452	IDAICIA1-IDA019RQ	24	78,594
	45	28452	IDA019RR-IDA019SM	24	79,115
3	1	28452	IDA019SN-IGX00029	12	34,938

Appendix B. Summary of Deletions

B.1 Components Dropped

The following components shipped with OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8 will be deleted and will not be reinstalled with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0:

Component	Description	Reason for Dropping
5752-SC1D6	MICR	Devices not supported
5752-SC1I0	IBCDMPRS	Superseded by DFDSS
5752-SC1I1	IBCDASDI	Superseded by Device Support Facilities
5752-SC1U0	IEHDASDR	Superseded by DFDSS and Device Support Facilities
5752-SC131	3344/3350 AP1	Function in Device Support Facilities

B.2 Modules/Macros Dropped

The following modules were shipped with OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8, and will not be shipped with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0:

Part Name	Component	Class	Reason for Dropping
APSOPTBL	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
CUPOINT	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
FINDDIT	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
IDAARWA	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDACPDEF	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDACRPLS	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDADSECT	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDAEQUS	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDAEXITR	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDAIOB	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDAIOSCN	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDAOCEA3	VSAM	MOD	Migration
IDAPFMT	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDASMFR	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IDAVBPJ1	VBP	MOD	Obsolete
IDAVBPS2	VBP	MOD	Obsolete
IEAVNP1C	VSAM	MOD	Obsolete
IECTATTN	Tape ERP	MOD	Obsolete
IECVDDT1	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
IECVOPTE	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
IECVOPTT	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
IECVXPRE	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
IEEVCHWA	Checkpoint/Restart	MAC	Obsolete
IEEVRSWA	Checkpoint/Restart	MAC	Obsolete
IEWFTMIN	Fetch	MOD	Obsolete
IEWFTNIP	Fetch	MOD	Obsolete
IFGACBVT	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IFGEXLVT	VSAM	MAC	Obsolete
IGBDCSVI	DASD Common Services	MOD	Obsolete
IGCMSG6C	Checkpoint/Restart	MOD	Obsolete
IGCOA06C	Checkpoint/Restart	MOD	Obsolete
IGCOP05B	Checkpoint/Restart	MOD	Obsolete
IGE0000D	U/R ERP	MOD	1052 & 3215 not supported

IGE0000H	U/R ERP	MOD	1052 & 3215 not supported
IGE0002A	U/R ERP	MOD	2761 not supported
IGE0100I	Tape ERP	MOD	Replaced
IGGCCNT1	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
IGGDDTP1	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
IGGDDT02	PAM	MOD	Obsolete
IGGDDT03	SIO EXITS	MOD	Obsolete
IGGDDT04	PAM	MOD	Obsolete
IGGR19BC	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGGR19CG	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGGR19CV	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0CLAB	VSAM	MOD	Obsolete
IGG0CLA1	VSAM	MOD	Alias
IGG0CLC9	VSAM	MOD	Obsolete no Longer Used
IGG019AT	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019AW	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019BF	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019BG	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019BM	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019BV	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019CD	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019CH	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019CM	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019CN	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019CO	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019CP	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019CQ	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019CR	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019CS	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG019CZ	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019C0	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019C1	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019C2	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019C3	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019C4	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019C6	3205/3525	MOD	3525 Appendage
IGG019FH	SAM	MOD	Deleted with 2245 Printer Support
IGG019FP	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG019JB	BDAM	MOD	Obsolete
IGG019KL	BDAM	MOD	Obsolete
IGG019TD	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191D	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191H	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191J	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191K	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191O	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191P	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191S	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191T	SAM	MOD	Deleted by 4245 Printer Support
IGG0191U	SAM	MOD	Deleted by 4245 Printer Support
IGG0191V	SAM	MOD	Deleted by 4245 Printer Support
IGG0191W	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191X	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0191Z	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01912	SAM	MOD	2761 not supported
IGG01917	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01918	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01919	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01923	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01926	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0196L	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0196P	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0197E	SAM	MOD	Deleted by 4245 Printer Support
IGG0197F	SAM	MOD	Deleted by 4245 Printer Support

IGG0197U	SAM	MOD	Deleted by 4245 Printer Support
IGG0199K	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG0199O	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01991	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01992	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01993	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IGG01994	SAM	MOD	Deleted by SAM-E
IHADCB	Open/Close/EOV	MAC	
IHASETSU	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
IHASU41	DASDR Utility	MAC	Obsolete
IHASU42	Offline 3800 Utility	MAC	Obsolete
IHASU72	Access Method Services Cryptographic Option	MAC	Obsolete
IHASU9	SAM	MAC	Obsolete
IHJQRS24	Checkpoint/Restart	MAC	Obsolete
IOCHECK	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
LIST	IEHLIST	MAC	Obsolete
LISTCVOL	IEHLIST	MAC	Obsolete
LOAD3	Tape ERP	MOD	Obsolete
MOD	IEHPROGM	MAC	Obsolete
SGADDR	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGAP	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGDFTGBL	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGDITGBL	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGDSPDFT	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGDSPDIT	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP01	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP02	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP03	PAM	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP05	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP06	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP07	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP08	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP09	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGFDSP10	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIAT4JL	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIAT5JL	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIAT5JM	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIAT5LL	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIAT5SI	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIAT5PR	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIAT6PA	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP01	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP02	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP03	PAM	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP05	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP06	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP07	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP08	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP09	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIDSP10	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIEC5PS	Open/Close/EOV	MAC	Obsolete
SGIECODT	PAM	MAC	Obsolete
SGIECCDT	SAM	MAC	Obsolete
SGIEI1CS	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIEI1IO	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIEI1SU	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIEI1SV	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGIKJ5EJ	TSO Utilities	MAC	Obsolete
SGOPCHAN	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGSETDIT	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SGSETGPT	SYSGEN	MAC	Obsolete
SU9DELET	SAM	MAC	Obsolete

B.3 FMIDs Deleted

All OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8, MVS/370 DFP, and MVS/XA DFP FMIDs whose second and third characters are DM, DP, DQ, DS, PM, ST, or UT are deleted by the installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. They include:

FMID	Description
EDM1102	OS/VS2 MVS 3.8 Base, data management
EDS1102	OS/VS2 MVS 3.8 Base, data management support
EPM1102	OS/VS2 MVS 3.8 Base, program management
EST1102	OS/VS2 MVS 3.8 Base, system support
EUT1102	OS/VS2 MVS 3.8 Base, utilities
FDM1133	3800-E data management
FDS1122	MVS Processor Support 2
FDS1133	3800-E data management support
FDS1143	Device Support Facilities Rel 2
FDS1243	Device Support Facilities Rel 3
FDS1443	Device Support Facilities Rel 4
FDS1543	Device Support Facilities Rel 5
FUT1133	3800-E Utilities
HDP1102	MVS/XA DFP 1.1.0
HDP2210	MVS/XA DFP 2.1.0
HDQ1102	MVS/370 DFP 1.1.0
JDM1112	SAM-E (SU-9)
JDM1113	DFEF Rel 1 (data management)
JDM1116	DFEF Rel 1 (Access Method Services Cryptographic Option intersect)
JDM1122	Access Method Services Cryptographic Option (SU-72)
JDM1132	Checkpoint/Restart Support Feature
JDM1134	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 1 (data management)
JDM1136	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 2 (data management)
JDM1137	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 4 (data management)
JDM1138	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 2 (data management for SAM-E intersects)
JDM1139	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 5 (data management support for 3880 Model 13)
JDM1141	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 5 (data management support)
JDM1142	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 5 (data management support)
JDM1145	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 6 (data management support for 3800 Model 3)
JDP1110	MVS/XA DFP 1.1.1
JDP1111	MVS/XA DFP 1.1.2
JDP2220	MVS/XA DFP 2.2.0
JDP2221	MVS/XA DFP 2.2.0 (NLS English)
JDQ1110	MVS/370 DFP 1.1.1
JDS1112	Direct Access Storage Dump Restore (DASDR) Utility (5740-UT1)
JDS1125	SP1 SYSGEN
JDS1134	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 1 (data management support)
JDS1136	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 2 (data management support)
JDS1137	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 4 (data management support)
JDS1139	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 5 (device support for 3880 Model 11)
JDS1140	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 5 (device support for 3380 and 3350P)
JDS1145	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 6 (device support for 3800 Model 3)
JPM1137	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 4 (program management)
JST1113	DFEF Rel 1 (TSO utilities)
JUT1112	Offline IBM 3800 Utility Program
JUT1113	DFEF Rel 1 (IEHLIST)
JUT1134	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 1 (utilities)
JUT1137	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 4 (utilities)
JUT1139	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 5 (utilities)
JUT1145	DFDS Rel 1 Mod 6 (utilities)

Appendix C. SMP Element Status Messages

C.1 Modules/Macros Deleted

Modules or macros which are deleted and have no MVS/Extended Architecture replacement will have an element status of 'deleted' in the SMP output. Deleted status for any or all of the following entries (in any order) is valid. (Those entries which have 'xxxx' or 'xxxxx' are intended to include all modules beginning with the specified characters.)

DELETE	DFEF1IVP	DFPIVP	DLBACC	DLBALLOC
DLBDELTE	DLBDELT2	DLBPROC	DLBREC	DLBREJ
DLBUCL	DRUDMPRS	DRMDxxxx	DSFR1DEL	IAPxxxxx
IBCDASDI	IBCDMPRS	ICKxxxxx	ICLSAV2	IDACBTAB
IDAVBPJ1	IDAVBPL	IDAVBPS2	IECDPRF2	
IECRPS	IECTATTN	IECVDMSG	IEHDxxxx	IENFTMIN
IGCMSG6C	IGCOP05B	IGC0008B	IGC0108B	IGC0208B
IGC0308B	IGC0508B	IGE0002A	IGE0011E	IGGDDT02
IGGDDT04	IGG0CLAB	IGG0CLA1	IGG0CLC9	IGG019AT
IGG019BF	IGG019BG	IGG019BM	IGG019CD	IGG019CG
IGG019CH	IGG019CM	IGG019CN	IGG019CO	IGG019CP
IGG019CQ	IGG019CR	IGG019CS	IGG019CZ	IGG019C0
IGG019C1	IGG019C3	IGG019C4	IGG019FP	IGG019JB
IGG019KL	IGG019P2	IGG019P7	IGG019P8	IGG019P9
IGG019V1	IGG019V2	IGG019V3	IGG019V4	IGG019V5
IGG01912	IGG0197C	IGG0197D	IGG0201D	IHADCB
IHADCBDF	IHARLD	IHASU41	IHASU42	IHASU72
IHASU9	IHJQRS24	IKJLKL02	IKJLKMSG	LIST
LISTCVOL	MOD	SAMPL84	SCIDC401	SGDEBCHK
SGHEW210	SGIEC5PS	SGIKJ5EJ	SU9DELET	USERLABL

C.2 Modules/Macros Not Selected

Some macros and modules function as placeholders for other products. For these macros and modules the element status may be 'not sel' meaning the MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 version of the modules or macro was not selected because it belongs to another product and the other product's version of the modules or macro was not deleted. These include:

Module/Macro	Product Which Replaces Module/Macro
DFQHCN00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHDL00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHHA00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHHB00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHHC00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHHD00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHHM00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHHR00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DFQHIX00	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DGTFMD04	Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
DGTHCM00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHCO00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHCP00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHCY00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHDU00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHIX50	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHRE00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHRL00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHRR00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTHRT00	Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)

```
DGTTCTD2        Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTTCTP2        Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTTLPD3        Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
DGTTLPD2        Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
IDATMSTP        Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
IFG0EX0A        Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
IGG026DU        Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
IGG029DM        Mass Storage System (MSS)
IGG029DU        Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
IGG030DU        Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
SGAPS4PP        Print Services Facility (PSF)
SGAPS5PR        Print Services Facility (PSF)
SGDZI40G        Overlay Generation Language (OGL)
SGFDSP05        Cryptographic Unit Support
SGIAT5JM        MVS/System Product - JES3
SGICH1SV        Resource Access Control Facility (RACF)
SGICP400        Input/Output Configuration Program (IOCP)
SGICU300        Cryptographic Unit Support
SGIDSP05        Kept for future use
SGIED510        Basic Telecommunications Access Method (BTAM)
SGIED512        Basic Telecommunications Access Method (BTAM)
SGIED513        Basic Telecommunications Access Method (BTAM)
SGIEH404        Device Support Facilities
SGIEH502        Device Support Facilities
SGIEI601        Resource Access Control Facility (RACF)
SGIEI602        Resource Measurement Facility (RMF)
SGIEI603        Programmed Cryptographic Facility (PCF)
SGIEI605        Data Facility Hierarchical Storage Manager (DFHSM)
SGIEI608        Data Facility Data Set Services (DFDSS)
SGIEI609        Graphics Access Method/System Product (GAM/SP)
SGIEI610        Print Services Facility
SGIEI612        Kept for future use
SGIEI613        Kept for future use
SGIEI614        Kept for future use
SGIEI615        Kept for future use
SGIEI616        Kept for future use
SGIEI617        Kept for future use
SGIEI618        Kept for future use
SGIEI619        Kept for future use
SGIEI620        Kept for future use
```

Notes:

1. When installing any of the products above after MVS/XA DFP Architecture DFP 2.3.0 is installed, make sure that the MVS/Extended Architecture DFP placeholders are replaced by the product being installed.

2. The two SYSGEN macros (SGIEH404 and SGIEH502) are part of Device Support Facilities Release 6 or higher. A 'NOT SEL' status for these two macros means that your system has Device Support Facilities Release 6 installed. Ensure that it is the MVS/Extended Architecture version of Device Support Facilities Release 6 (5655-257).

C.3 Modules Not Applied

Some modules are included in the target system by the SYSGEN process only if they are required to support specific devices and functions. It is likely that some of the modules contained in MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 will not be required to support the target system defined by your SYSGEN. During the SMP apply process, the receipt of message HMA4341 (SMP4) or GIM4341 (SMP/E) for any of the following modules indicates that the supported function or device was not included in the stage I definition (and therefore, the module is not required). Those entries ending with '-' are intended to include all modules beginning with the specified characters.

Module	Support
IGG019G-	ISAM
IGG019H-	ISAM
IGG019I-	ISAM
IGG019J-	ISAM
IGG0192-	ISAM
IGG0195-	ISAM
IGG0196C	ISAM
IGG0196D	ISAM
IGG0196G	ISAM
IGG0202A	ISAM
IGG0202D	ISAM
IGG0202I	ISAM
IGG0202J	ISAM
IGG0202K	ISAM
IGG0202L	ISAM
IGG0202M	ISAM
IGG0202N	ISAM
IGG02028	ISAM
IGG02029	ISAM

Appendix D. JCL to Update SYS1.IMAGELIB

The following job (member LCSBUILD in SYS1.SAMPLIB) may be used to install the library character sets, graphic character modification modules, and character arrangement tables in SYS1.IMAGELIB. This job produces approximately 470,000 lines of output; you may wish to split it into several jobs. The comments in the job are clarified below.

D.1 Notes on the IBM 3800 Modules

Module names beginning with the characters LCS1 are for the 3800-1 and can be omitted if there is no 3800-1 installed. All of these modules are identical to modules distributed with the same names in IBM 3800 Model 1 Enhancements (FMID FDM1133), in Data Facility Device Support (DFDS) Release 1.6 (FMID JDM1145), in MVS/370 DFP (FMID HDQ1102), and in MVS/XA DFP Release 1.1. If you have the LCS1 modules from one of these products, you do not have to install the newer versions. Installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 does *not* cause these modules to be deleted from SYS1.IMAGELIB.

Module names beginning with the characters LCS2 or GRF2 are for the 3800-3. Module names beginning with the characters XTB1 are for both the 3800-1 and the 3800-3 if appropriate graphic character modification modules and library character sets are available. Most of these LCS2, GRF2, and XTB1 modules are identical to modules distributed with the same names in MVS/370 DFP (FMID HDQ1102), in Data Facility Device Support (DFDS) Release 1.6 (FMID JDM1145), and in MVS/XA DFP Release 1.2 (FMID JDP1111). Some contain corrections to errors found in earlier versions. If you are installing MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 on an existing system and are satisfied with the 3800 modules, you do not have to reinstall the newer versions. Installation of MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 does *not* cause these modules to be deleted from SYS1.IMAGELIB. See IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem Model 3 Programmer's Guide: Compatibility

LCS1 modules are not necessary to run the 3800-1; their purpose is to allow better 3800 performance and ease of use. In order to use the LCS1 modules, the appropriate character arrangement tables must be updated. The last two characters of each name are hexadecimal values one greater than the corresponding diskette character sets. For further information, refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Data Administration: Utilities or IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem Programmer's Guide.

LCS2 modules are necessary to run the 3800-3 when using any character arrangement table (XTB1) that is distributed in SYS1.AOSD0. These character arrangement tables are named in the DATAMGT description in MVS/Extended Architecture Installation: System Generation, GA26-4148. The specify character sets other than X'FF', and are translated by the system to their LCS2 equivalents.

In the LCSBUILD job shown below, all of the character arrangement tables can be used with 3800-3 when it is run in line mode, i.e. not under Print Services Facility (PSF) (5665-275). All of them require graphic character modification modules. No 3800-1 versions of these graphic character modification modules are distributed with MVS/370 DFP or MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0. The 3800-1 versions of the graphic character modification modules for some of the character arrangement tables are distributed with Document Composition Facility (SCRIPT/VS), 5748-XX9.

D.2 SYS1.IMAGELIB Space Requirements

The installation of all of the library character sets, graphic character modification modules, and character arrangement tables contained in job LCSBUILD will require approximately 200 tracks and 40 directory blocks additional space in SYS1.IMAGELIB on a 3330 device. Refer to table below for specific space allocations.

Estimated Additional DASD Space					
		Tracks			Dir
Data Set Name	Blocksize	3330	3350	3380	Block
SYS1.IMAGELIB	13030	200	145	60	40

Prior to IBM 3800 Model 1 Enhancements, SYS1.IMAGELIB had to reside in a single extent. IBM 3800 Model 1 Enhancements, MVS/370 DFP, and MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 allow the use of secondary space allocation for SYS1.IMAGELIB. Before executing job LCSBUILD, you may want to assign a secondary space value to SYS1.IMAGELIB (if secondary space has not already been allocated). This can be done by specifying a SPACE parameter on the SYSUT1 DD statement. The primary space, secondary space, and number of directory block values must be specified, even though the secondary space value is the only value that will be changed.

D.3 The LCSBUILD Job

If you execute job LCSBUILD on a system that does not have MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 installed, you must insert a JOBLIB or STEPLIB DD statement that points to SYS1.LINKLIB on an MVS system at an appropriate level. The IEBIMAGE utility delivered with MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, MVS/370 DFP R1.0, or VS2 DFDS R1.6 is required to produce correct output from job LCSBUILD. Refer to MVS/Extended Architecture Data Administration: Utilities for information on the IEBIMAGE utility.

Update the parameters in the LCSBUILD job stream to meet your installation's requirements.

```
//LCSBUILD JOB MSGLEVEL=1
//*
//*     INSTALL 3800 LIBRARY CHARACTER SETS, GRAPHMODS, AND
//* CHARACTER ARRANGEMENT TABLES IN SYS1.IMAGELIB.
//*     IEBIMAGE MUST BE AT THE LEVEL THAT SUPPORTS 3800-3.
//*     MODULE NAMES STARTING WITH THE CHARACTERS 'LCS1'
//* ARE FOR THE 3800-1, AND CAN BE OMITTED IF THERE IS NO
//* 3800-1 INSTALLED.  (IF OMITTED, MOVE THE 'SYSIN' NAME
//* TO A LATER DD STATEMENT.)  MODULE NAMES STARTING WITH
//* THE CHARACTERS 'LCS2' OR 'GRF2' ARE FOR THE 3800-3,
//* AND CAN BE OMITTED IF THERE IS NO 3800-3 INSTALLED.
//* MODULE NAMES STARTING WITH THE CHARACTERS 'XTB1' ARE
//* FOR BOTH THE 3800-1 AND THE 3800-3.
//*     THE COMPLETE JOB WILL PRODUCE ABOUT 470,000 LINES
//* OF OUTPUT.  YOU MAY WISH TO SPLIT THIS INTO SEVERAL
//* JOBS.
//*
//LCS3800  EXEC PGM=IEBIMAGE
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1   DD DSN=SYS1.IMAGELIB,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN     DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS10B)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS10D)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS109)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS111)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS117)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS119)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS11B)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS11D)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS11F)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS137)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS139)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS13B)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS13D)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS13F)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS141)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS183)
//           DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS185)
```

```
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS187)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS18F)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS193)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS20B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS20D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS209)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS211)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS217)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS219)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS21B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS21D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS21F)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS237)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS239)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS23B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS23D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS23F)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS241)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS283)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS285)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS287)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS28F)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(LCS293)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2192A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2192B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2193A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2193B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2198A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2198B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2AE0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2AE0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2AE0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2BITA)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2BITB)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2BRTA)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2BRTB)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2BRTC)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2BRTD)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CE0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CE0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CE0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CE2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CE2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CE2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2C00A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2C00B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CR0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CR0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CR0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2CR0D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2D0TA)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2D0TB)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2D0TC)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2D0TD)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2D0TE)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EBTA)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EBTB)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EBTC)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EBTD)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EITA)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EITB)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EITC)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2EITD)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ESTA)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ESTB)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ESTC)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ESTD)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GB0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GB0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GB0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GB2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GB2B)
```

```
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GB2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GI2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GI2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GI2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GP2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GP2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GP2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GR0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GR0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GR0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT5A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT5B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2GT5C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2LB2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2LB2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2LR2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2LR2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2LR2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2LR2D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PB2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PB2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PB2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PB2D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PI2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PI2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PI2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PI2D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR0D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2PR2D)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2OB0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2OB0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2OR0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2OR0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2RT0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2RT0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2RT0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SB2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SB2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SB2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SI0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SI0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SI0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SI2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SI2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SI2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SO2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SO2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SO2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SR2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2SR2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST0A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST0B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST0C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST2A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST2B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST2C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST5A)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST5B)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(GRF2ST5C)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1AE10)
```

```
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1BITR)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1BRTR)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1CE10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1CE12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1CO10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1CR10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1DOTR)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1EBTR)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1EITR)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1ESTR)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GB10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GB12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GI12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GP12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GR10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GT10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GT12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1GT15)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1LB12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1LR12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1OB10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1OR10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1PB12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1PI12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1PR10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1PR12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1RT10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1SB12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1SI10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1SI12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1SO12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1SR12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1ST10)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1ST12)
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.AIMAGE(XTB1ST15)
```

Appendix E. DFP Cleanup Jobs

The cleanup jobs can be found in HDP2230.F2.

E.1 DFPCLN04

The following lists the contents of job DFPCLN04 which is refered to in "SMP4: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System".

```
//DFPCLN04 JOB ,'CLEAN UP SYSLIBS',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS CLEANUP JOB IS TO RE-LINKEDIT CERTAIN
//* RESTRUCTURED SYSTEM LIBRARY MODULES, AND DELETE OBSOLETE
//* MODULES FROM SYSTEM LIBRARIES. THIS JOB IS TO BE RUN BY THE
//* SMP4 USER PRIOR TO INSTALLING MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 ON AN
//* EXISTING MVS/XA SYSTEM. THIS JOB AND JOB DFPCLN05 SHOULD BE
//* RUN BEFORE RUNNING JOB DFPCLN10 WHICH WILL DELETE FUNCTIONS
//* THAT MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 WILL REPLACE.
//*
//* NOTE: STEP LINKLPA OF THIS JOB MOVES MODULE IDATMSTP FROM LOAD
//*       MODULE IDA0192A TO LOAD MODULE IDATMSTP. STEP DELLPA THEN
//*       DELETES LOAD MODULE IDA0192A IF STEP LINKLPA SUCCESSFULLY
//*       EXECUTES WITH A RETURN CODE OF ZERO. ONCE STEPS LINKLPA
//*       AND DELLPA HAVE SUCCESSFULLY BEEN RUN, STEP LINKLPA
//*       SHOULD NEVER BE RE-RUN.
//*
//* THIS JOB CONSISTS OF JCL WHICH
//*   1) USES THE IEBUPDTE UTILITY TO CREATE MEMBERS IN A
//*      TEMPORARY PDS CONTAINING LINKAGE EDITOR AND ACCESS
//*      METHOD SERVICES CONTROL CARDS.
//*   2) DEFINES AN IN-STREAM PROCEDURE WHICH INVOKES THE
//*      LINKAGE EDITOR AND ACCESS METHOD SERVICES.
//*   3) INVOKES THE IN-STREAM PROCEDURE.
//*
//* CHANGE THE UNIT UUUU TO THE APPROPRIATE UNIT FOR YOUR
//* INSTALLATION AND CHANGE VVVVVV TO THE CORRECT VOLSER
//* FOR YOUR SYSTEM LIBRARIES.
//*
//*  EXPECTED RETURN CODES:
//*     STEP NAME - - - RETURN CODE
//*     UPDTE  -------- 00
//*     LINKNUC  ------ 04
//*     LINKLPA  ------ 00
//*     DELLPA  ------- 00
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//UPDTE    EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT2   DD DSN=CLNSYSLB,UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=(NEW,PASS),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         SPACE=(TRK,(2,2,1))
//SYSIN    DD DATA
./ ADD NAME=LINKNUC,LIST=ALL
./ NUMBER NEW1=100,INCR=100
          REPLACE APSOPTBL
          REPLACE IECDINIT
          REPLACE IECDPRFX
          REPLACE IECDPRF2
          REPLACE IECDSCAN
          REPLACE IECDTRAP
          REPLACE IECTDSRV
          REPLACE IECTTRAP
          REPLACE IECVDDTR
```

```
            REPLACE IECVDDT1
            REPLACE IECVDERP
            REPLACE IECVDER2
            REPLACE IECVDMSG
            REPLACE IECVDPSV
            REPLACE IECVPRNT
            REPLACE IECVXT6S
            REPLACE IECVXT6U
            REPLACE IGGCCNT1
            REPLACE IGGDDTP1
            REPLACE IGGDDT01
            REPLACE IGGDDT02
            REPLACE IGGDDT03
            REPLACE IGGDDT04
            REPLACE IGGSNS01
            REPLACE IGGSNS02
            REPLACE IECZDTAB
        INCLUDE NUCLEUS(IEANUC01)
        NAME  IEANUC01(R)
./ ADD NAME=LINKLPA,LIST=ALL
./ NUMBER NEW1=100,INCR=100
            REPLACE IDACOPYR
            REPLACE IDAOCTBL
            REPLACE IFG0192A
            REPLACE IDA0192A
            REPLACE IDA0192B
            REPLACE IDA0192F
            REPLACE IDA0192M
            REPLACE IDA0192W
            REPLACE IDA0192X
            REPLACE IDA0192Y
            REPLACE IDA0192Z
            REPLACE IDA0200T
            REPLACE IDA0200B
            REPLACE IDA0231T
            REPLACE IDA0231B
            REPLACE IDA0557A
            REPLACE IDA0557B
            REPLACE IDA0557X
            REPLACE IDA0192C
            REPLACE IDA0192D
            REPLACE IDA0192G
            REPLACE IDA0192P
            REPLACE IDA0192S
            REPLACE IDA0192V
            REPLACE IDA0192I
            REPLACE IDA0200S
            REPLACE IDAOC06C
            REPLACE IDAOI96C
            REPLACE IDAOA05B
            REPLACE IDAOC05B
            REPLACE IDACKRA1
            REPLACE IDA0192L
            REPLACE IDAICIA1
            REPLACE IDAOCEA1
            REPLACE IDAOCEA2
            REPLACE IDAOCEA4
            REPLACE IDA0195A
        INCLUDE LPALIB(IDA0192A)
        NAME IDATMSTP
./ ADD NAME=DELLPA,LIST=ALL
./ NUMBER NEW1=100,INCR=100
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDAOA05B) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDAOC05B) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDAOC06C) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDAOI96C) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192C) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192V) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192X) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192A) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IGG0300F) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
./ ENDUP
```

```
/*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//CLNSYSLB PROC V=VVVVVV,U=UUUU
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//LINKNUC  EXEC PGM=HEWLH096,
//         PARM='LIST,LET,NCAL,XREF,SCTR,SIZE=(1024K,512K)'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(10,10))
//NUCLEUS  DD DSN=SYS1.NUCLEUS,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSLMOD  DD DSN=SYS1.NUCLEUS,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSLIN   DD DSN=CLNSYSLB(LINKNUC),DISP=(OLD,PASS)
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//LINKLPA EXEC PGM=HEWLH096,
//         PARM='LIST,LET,NCAL,XREF,RENT,SIZE=(768K,512K)'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(10,10))
//LPALIB   DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSLMOD  DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSLIN   DD DSN=CLNSYSLB(LINKLPA),DISP=(OLD,PASS)
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//DELLPA   EXEC PGM=IDCAMS,COND=(0,NE,LINKLPA)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//LPALIB   DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSIN    DD DSN=CLNSYSLB(DELLPA),DISP=(OLD,PASS)
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//         PEND
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP     EXEC CLNSYSLB,V=VVVVVV,U=UUUU
```

E.2 DFPCLN05

The following lists the contents of job DFPCLN05 which is refered to in "SMP4: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System".

```
//DFPCLN05 JOB ,'CLEAN UP SMP4 CDS',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THIS JOB IS TO BE RUN BY THE SMP4 USER INSTALLING
//* MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 ON AN EXISTING MVS/XA SYSTEM.
//* THIS JOB AND JOB DFPCLN04 SHOULD BE RUN PRIOR TO RUNNING
//* JOB DFPCLN10 WHICH DELETES PREVIOUS LEVELS OF MVS/XA DFP.
//* THIS CLEANUP JOB MODIFIES THE SMP4 CDS TO DELETE A LMOD
//* ENTRY FOR MODULE IDATMSTP WHICH WILL RESIDE IN LOAD MODULE
//* IDATMSTP ONLY .
//*
//*
//* THIS JOB CONSISTS OF JCL WHICH
//*   1) USES THE IEBUPDTE UTILITY TO CREATE MEMBERS IN A
//*      TEMPORARY PDS CONTAINING SMP CONTROL CARDS,
//*   2) DEFINES AN IN-STREAM PROCEDURE WHICH INVOKES SMP
//*   3) INVOKES THE IN-STREAM PROCEDURE.
//*
//* CHANGE THE UNIT UUUU TO THE APPROPRIATE UNIT FOR YOUR
//* INSTALLATION AND CHANGE VVVVVV TO THE CORRECT VOLSER
//* WHICH CONTAINS THE SYS1.SMPCDS DATASET.
//*
//*  EXPECTED RETURN CODES FROM EACH STEP ARE:
//*
//*      STEP         RETURN CODE
//*      UPDTE  ----    00
//*      UCLCDS ----    00
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//UPDTE    EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2   DD DSN=CLNSMP4,UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=(NEW,PASS),DCB=(LRECL=80,
```

```
//            BLKSIZE=3120,RECFM=FB),SPACE=(TRK,(10,10,3))
//SYSIN     DD DATA
./ ADD NAME=UCLCDS,LIST=ALL
./ NUMBER NEW1=100,INCR=100
 UCLIN CDS DIS(WRITE) .
   REP MOD(IDATMSTP) LMOD( ).
   DEL MOD(IECZDTAB) .
 ENDUCL .
./ ENDUP
/*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//CLNSMP4   PROC V=VVVVVV,U=UUUU
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//UCLCDS    EXEC PGM=HMASMP,REGION=4096K,PARM='DATE=U'
//SMPLIST   DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP  DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPLOG    DD DUMMY
//SMPOUT    DD SYSOUT=A
//SMPCNTL   DD DSN=CLNSMP4(UCLCDS),DISP=(OLD,PASS)
//SMPCDS    DD DSN=SYS1.SMPCDS,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//          PEND
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//CALLSMP   EXEC CLNSMP4,V=VVVVVV,U=UUUU
```

E.3 DFPCLN06

The following lists the contents of job DFPCLN06 which is refered to in "SMP/E: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System".

```
//DFPCLN06 JOB ,'CLEAN UP SYSLIBS',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS CLEANUP JOB IS TO RE-LINKEDIT CERTAIN
//* RESTRUCTURED SYSTEM LIBRARY MODULES, AND DELETE OBSOLETE
//* ALIASES FROM SYSTEM LIBRARIES. THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY
//* THE SMP/E USER WHO IS INSTALLING MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 ON AN
//* EXISTING MVS/XA SYSTEM. THIS CLEANUP JOB SHOULD BE RUN
//* BEFORE DFPCLN07 WHICH DELETES PREVIOUS LEVELS OF MVS/XA DFP.
//*
//* NOTE: STEP LINKLPA OF THIS JOB MOVES MODULE IDATMSTP FROM LOAD
//*       MODULE IDA0192A TO LOAD MODULE IDATMSTP. STEP DELLPA THEN
//*       DELETES LOAD MODULE IDA0192A IF STEP LINKLPA SUCCESSFULLY
//*       EXECUTES WITH A RETURN CODE OF ZERO. ONCE STEPS LINKLPA
//*       AND DELLPA HAVE SUCCESSFULLY BEEN RUN, STEP LINKLPA
//*       SHOULD NEVER BE RE-RUN.
//*
//* THIS JOB CONSISTS OF JCL WHICH
//*   1) USES THE IEBUPDTE UTILITY TO CREATE MEMBERS IN A
//*      TEMPORARY PDS CONTAINING LINKAGE EDITOR AND ACCESS
//*      METHOD SERVICES CONTROL CARDS.
//*   2) DEFINES AN IN-STREAM PROCEDURE WHICH INVOKES THE
//*      LINKAGE EDITOR AND ACCESS METHOD SERVICES.
//*   3) INVOKES THE IN-STREAM PROCEDURE.
//*
//* CHANGE THE UNIT UUUU TO THE APPROPRIATE UNIT FOR YOUR
//* INSTALLATION AND CHANGE VVVVVV TO THE CORRECT VOLSER
//* FOR YOUR SYSTEM LIBRARIES.
//*
//*  EXPECTED RETURN CODES:
//*     STEP NAME - - - RETURN CODE
//*     UPDTE  -------- 00
//*     LINKLPA  ------ 00
//*     DELLPA  ------- 00
//*
```

```
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//UPDTE    EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT2   DD DSN=DFPCLEAN,UNIT=SYSDA,DISP=(NEW,PASS),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,RECFM=FB),
//         SPACE=(TRK,(2,2,1))
//SYSIN    DD DATA
./ ADD NAME=LNKLPA,LIST=ALL
./ NUMBER NEW1=100,INCR=100
 REPLACE IDACOPYR
 REPLACE IDAOCTBL
 REPLACE IFG0192A
 REPLACE IDA0192A
 REPLACE IDA0192B
 REPLACE IDA0192F
 REPLACE IDA0192M
 REPLACE IDA0192W
 REPLACE IDA0192X
 REPLACE IDA0192Y
 REPLACE IDA0192Z
 REPLACE IDA0200T
 REPLACE IDA0200B
 REPLACE IDA0231T
 REPLACE IDA0231B
 REPLACE IDA0557A
 REPLACE IDA0557B
 REPLACE IDA0557X
 REPLACE IDA0192C
 REPLACE IDA0192D
 REPLACE IDA0192G
 REPLACE IDA0192P
 REPLACE IDA0192S
 REPLACE IDA0192V
 REPLACE IDA0192I
 REPLACE IDA0200S
 REPLACE IDA0C06C
 REPLACE IDA0I96C
 REPLACE IDA0A05B
 REPLACE IDA0C05B
 REPLACE IDACKRA1
 REPLACE IDA0192L
 REPLACE IDAICIA1
 REPLACE IDAOCEA1
 REPLACE IDAOCEA2
 REPLACE IDAOCEA4
 REPLACE IDA0195A
 INCLUDE LPALIB(IDA0192A)
 NAME IDATMSTP
./ ADD NAME=DELLPA,LIST=ALL
./ NUMBER NEW1=100,INCR=100
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0A05B) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0C05B) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0C06C) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0I96C) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192C) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192V) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192X) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IDA0192A) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
     DELETE SYS1.LPALIB(IGG0300F) FILE(LPALIB) PURGE
./ ENDUP
/*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//CLEANDFP PROC V=VVVVVV,U=UUUU
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//LINKLPA  EXEC PGM=HEWLH096,
//         PARM='LIST,LET,NCAL,XREF,SIZE=(768K,512K)'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1   DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(10,10))
//LPALIB   DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSLMOD  DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSLIN   DD DSN=DFPCLEAN(LNKLPA),DISP=(OLD,PASS)
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
//DELLPA   EXEC PGM=IDCAMS,COND=(0,NE,LINKLPA)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//LPALIB   DD DSN=SYS1.LPALIB,DISP=SHR,UNIT=&U.,VOL=SER=&V.
//SYSIN    DD DSN=DFPCLEAN(DELLPA),DISP=(OLD,PASS)
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//         PEND
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP     EXEC CLEANDFP,V=VVVVVV,U=UUUU
```

E.4 DFPCLN07

The following lists the contents of job DFPCLN07 which is refered to in "SMP/E: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System".

```
//DFPCLN07 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE THE PREVIOUS LEVEL
//* OF MVS/XA DFP AND PROVIDE UCLIN FOR A RESTRUCTURED
//* LOAD MODULE. THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP/E USER
//* INSTALLING MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 ON AN EXISTING MVS/XA SYSTEM.
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN AFTER DFPCLN06 AND BEFORE THE
//* INSTALLATION OF MVS/XA DFP V2.3.0 . THIS JOB ASSUMES A
//* PROCEDURE NAMED "SMPE" EXISTS WITH ALL THE NECESSARY DATA
//* DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED .
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP1   EXEC SMPE
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)  DELETE(HDP1102,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,
                    HDP2210,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222) .
++MOD(IECZDTAB) DISTLIB(SYSPUNCH) DELETE .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  RECEIVE LIST SYSMODS .
  SET BDY(tgtzone) . /* change boundary to your target zone */
  UCLIN .
  REP MOD(IDATMSTP) LMOD( ) .
  ENDUCL .
  APPLY S(DELDFP2) BYPASS(ID) .
  SET BDY(dlbzone) . /* change boundary to your */
                     /* distribution zone       */
  UCLIN .
  REP MOD(IDATMSTP) LMOD( ) .
  ENDUCL .
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) .
/*
```

E.5 DFPCLN08

The following lists the contents of job DFPCLN08 which is refered to in "SMP4: SYSGEN onto MVS/370 DFP or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8".

```
//DFPCLN08 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE FUNCTIONS REPLACED BY
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, AND SHOULD BE RUN BEFORE IT IS ACCEPTED.
```

```
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP4 USER WHO IS INSTALLING
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 ONTO MVS/370 DFP OR OS/VS2 MVS RELEASE 3.8
//* DLIBS PRIOR TO DOING A FULL SYSGEN. THIS JOB ASSUMES A
//* PROCEDURE NAMED "SMP4" EXISTS WITH ALL THE NECESSARY DATA
//* DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED.
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP1   EXEC SMP4
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)
   DELETE(EDM1102,EDS1102,EPM1102,EST1102,EUT1102,FDM1133,FDS1122,
          FDS1133,FDS1143,FDS1243,FDS1443,FDS1543,FUT1133,HDP1102,
          HDP2210,HDQ1102,JDM1112,JDM1113,JDM1116,JDM1122,JDM1132,
          JDM1134,JDM1136,JDM1137,JDM1138,JDM1139,JDM1141,JDM1142,
          JDM1145,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222,
          JDQ1110,JDS1112,JDS1125,JDS1134,JDS1136,JDS1137,JDS1139,
          JDS1140,JDS1145,JPM1137,JST1113,JUT1112,JUT1113,JUT1134,
          JUT1137,JUT1139,JUT1145) .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  RECEIVE S(DELDFP2) .
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) NOAPPLY DIS(WRITE) .
/*
```

E.6 DFPCLN09

The following lists the contents of job DFPCLN09 which is refered to in "SMP/E: SYSGEN/GENERATE onto MVS/370 DFP or OS/VS2 MVS Release 3.8".

```
//DFPCLN09 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE FUNCTIONS REPLACED BY
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, AND SHOULD BE RUN BEFORE IT IS ACCEPTED.
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP/E USER WHO IS INSTALLING
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 ONTO MVS/370 DFP OR OS/VS2 MVS RELEASE 3.8
//* DLIBS PRIOR TO DOING A FULL SYSGEN OR SMP/E GENERATE. THIS
//* JOB ASSUMES A PROCEDURE NAMED "SMPE" EXISTS WITH ALL
//* DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED.
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP1   EXEC SMPE
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)
   DELETE(EDM1102,EDS1102,EPM1102,EST1102,EUT1102,FDM1133,FDS1122,
          FDS1133,FDS1143,FDS1243,FDS1443,FDS1543,FUT1133,HDP1102,
          HDP2210,HDQ1102,JDM1112,JDM1113,JDM1116,JDM1122,JDM1132,
          JDM1134,JDM1136,JDM1137,JDM1138,JDM1139,JDM1141,JDM1142,
          JDM1145,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222,
          JDQ1110,JDS1112,JDS1125,JDS1134,JDS1136,JDS1137,JDS1139,
          JDS1140,JDS1145,JPM1137,JST1113,JUT1112,JUT1113,JUT1134,
          JUT1137,JUT1139,JUT1145) .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  SET BDY(GLOBAL) .
  RECEIVE LIST SYSMODS .
  SET BDY(dlbzone) .  /* change to your distribution zone */
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) .
/*
```

E.7 DFPCLN10

The following lists the contents of job DFPCLN10 which is refered to in "SMP4: APPLY on an Existing MVS/XA DFP System

```
//DFPCLN10 JOB ,'SMP DELETE',REGION=4096K
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//* THE PURPOSE OF THIS JOB IS TO DELETE FUNCTIONS REPLACED BY
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0, AND SHOULD BE RUN BEFORE IT IS ACCEPTED.
//* THIS JOB SHOULD BE RUN BY THE SMP4 USER WHO IS INSTALLING
//* MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0 ONTO AN EXISTING MVS/XA SYSTEM. THIS JOB
//* SHOULD BE RUN AFTER JOBS DFPCLN04 AND DFPCLN05 HAVE BEEN
//* EXECUTED. THIS JOB ASSUMES A PROCEDURE NAMED "SMP4" EXISTS
//* WITH ALL THE NECESSARY DATA DEFINITION STATEMENTS DEFINED.
//*
//*-------------------------------------------------------------------
//STEP1   EXEC SMP4
//SMPPTFIN DD *
++FUNCTION(DELDFP2) .
++VER(Z038)  DELETE(HDP1102,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,
                    HDP2210,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222) .
/*
//SMPCNTL DD *
  RECEIVE S(DELDFP2) .
  APPLY  S(DELDFP2) DIS(WRITE) .
  ACCEPT S(DELDFP2) DIS(WRITE) .
/*
```

Appendix F. APAR LIST for HDP2230

Listed below is a list of APARs included in MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0:

OZ76162,OZ76420,OZ76842,OZ78059,OZ78501,OZ78855,OZ79058,OZ80376,
OZ80559,OZ80576,OZ80599,OZ80951,OZ81159,OZ81181,OZ81275,OZ81396,
OZ81676,OZ81677,OZ81880,OZ81946,OZ82217,OZ82365,OZ82370,OZ82464,
OZ82513,OZ82525,OZ82528,OZ82536,OZ82681,OZ82690,OZ82756,OZ82809,
OZ82929,OZ82988,OZ83048,OZ83109,OZ83261,OZ83308,OZ83321,OZ83334,
OZ83382,OZ83431,OZ83506,OZ83603,OZ83655,OZ83661,OZ83721,OZ83751,
OZ83851,OZ83856,OZ83919,OZ83930,OZ83963,OZ83975,OZ83983,OZ84013,
OZ84040,OZ84064,OZ84066,OZ84070,OZ84126,OZ84212,OZ84225,OZ84292,
OZ84369,OZ84370,OZ84386,OZ84438,OZ84468,OZ84495,OZ84556,OZ84573,
OZ84597,OZ84612,OZ84656,OZ84662,OZ84667,OZ84691,OZ84703,OZ84737,
OZ84738,OZ84750,OZ84793,OZ84856,OZ84955,OZ84986,OZ84989,OZ85026,
OZ85063,OZ85071,OZ85107,OZ85159,OZ85187,OZ85265,OZ85268,OZ85279,
OZ85314,OZ85342,OZ85398,OZ85487,OZ85504,OZ85575,OZ85670,OZ85692,
OZ85718,OZ85752,OZ85782,OZ85810,OZ85845,OZ86008,OZ86019,OZ86129,
OZ86157,OZ86189,OZ86195,OZ86200,OZ86224,OZ86226,OZ86239,OZ86242,
OZ86281,OZ86307,OZ86362,OZ86363,OZ86364,OZ86383,OZ86392,OZ86395,
OZ86396,OZ86399,OZ86428,OZ86432,OZ86471,OZ86542,OZ86573,OZ86641,
OZ86667,OZ86701,OZ86729,OZ86750,OZ86782,OZ86783,OZ86811,OZ86856,
OZ86857,OZ86872,OZ86972,OZ87013,OZ87069,OZ87087,OZ87093,OZ87171,
OZ87178,OZ87191,OZ87232,OZ87246,OZ87300,OZ87459,OZ87463,OZ87511,
OZ87539,OZ87600,OZ87626,OZ87645,OZ87648,OZ87657,OZ87667,OZ87681,
OZ87702,OZ87715,OZ87717,OZ87735,OZ87736,OZ87769,OZ87871,OZ87942,
OZ87966,OZ87985,OZ87997,OZ88006,OZ88063,OZ88117,OZ88120,OZ88145,
OZ88151,OZ88176,OZ88183,OZ88203,OZ88220,OZ88254,OZ88257,OZ88285,
OZ88335,OZ88391,OZ88415,OZ88422,OZ88425,OZ88426,OZ88427,OZ88431,
OZ88431,OZ88446,OZ88489,OZ88521,OZ88524,OZ88558,OZ88559,OZ88560,
OZ88570,OZ88599,OZ88608,OZ88626,OZ88644,OZ88649,OZ88651,OZ88672,
OZ88675,OZ88677,OZ88678,OZ88729,OZ88761,OZ88781,OZ88821,OZ88824,
OZ88839,OZ88845,OZ88853,OZ88893,OZ88912,OZ88946,OZ88956,OZ88962,
OZ88974,OZ88988,OZ89004,OZ89024,OZ89026,OZ89047,OZ89071,OZ89076,
OZ89082,OZ89126,OZ89127,OZ89140,OZ89144,OZ89163,OZ89193,OZ89213,
OZ89214,OZ89215,OZ89216,OZ89217,OZ89218,OZ89219,OZ89220,OZ89221,
OZ89224,OZ89225,OZ89226,OZ89227,OZ89228,OZ89230,OZ89231,OZ89233,
OZ89234,OZ89235,OZ89236,OZ89237,OZ89239,OZ89262,OZ89264,OZ89286,
OZ89289,OZ89304,OZ89306,OZ89308,OZ89336,OZ89337,OZ89347,OZ89370,
OZ89379,OZ89387,OZ89397,OZ89399,OZ89407,OZ89434,OZ89474,OZ89524,
OZ89532,OZ89540,OZ89565,OZ89588,OZ89619,OZ89623,OZ89679,OZ89706,
OZ89728,OZ89729,OZ89747,OZ89754,OZ89774,OZ89781,OZ89785,OZ89790,
OZ89801,OZ89808,OZ89809,OZ89824,OZ89828,OZ89832,OZ89836,OZ89848,
OZ89851,OZ89867,OZ89871,OZ89881,OZ89883,OZ89888,OZ89894,OZ89906,
OZ89915,OZ89962,OZ89970,OZ89973,OZ89978,OZ89987,OZ90001,OZ90002,
OZ90003,OZ90009,OZ90034,OZ90038,OZ90039,OZ90068,OZ90084,OZ90088,
OZ90093,OZ90123,OZ90127,OZ90135,OZ90137,OZ90159,OZ90167,OZ90173,
OZ90195,OZ90204,OZ90212,OZ90235,OZ90239,OZ90243,OZ90257,OZ90259,
OZ90269,OZ90276,OZ90288,OZ90291,OZ90293,OZ90326,OZ90344,OZ90376,
OZ90379,OZ90381,OZ90383,OZ90447,OZ90458,OZ90483,OZ90499,OZ90521,
OZ90533,OZ90565,OZ90581,OZ90605,OZ90617,OZ90621,OZ90639,OZ90655,
OZ90665,OZ90669,OZ90673,OZ90680,OZ90688,OZ90695,OZ90733,OZ90735,
OZ90736,OZ90737,OZ90738,OZ90739,OZ90740,OZ90742,OZ90754,OZ90823,
OZ90845,OZ90858,OZ90922,OZ90923,OZ90942,OZ90988,OZ90997,OZ91007,
OZ91027,OZ91029,OZ91049,OZ91066,OZ91078,OZ91085,OZ91087,OZ91114,
OZ91142,OZ91177,OZ91180,OZ91197,OZ91207,OZ91225,OZ91250,OZ91270,
OZ91284,OZ91287,OZ91311,OZ91329,OZ91333,OZ91357,OZ91382,OZ91404,
OZ91422,OZ91450,OZ91485,OZ91503,OZ91506,OZ91513,OZ91515,OZ91539,
OZ91562,OZ91569,OZ91581,OZ91617,OZ91642,OZ91656,OZ91658,OZ91674,
OZ91699,OZ91721,OZ91741,OZ91742,OZ91743,OZ91758,OZ91763,OZ91765,
OZ91777,OZ91791,OZ91829,OZ91955,OZ91958,OZ91959,OZ91965,OZ92002,
OZ92010,OZ92036,OZ92101,OZ92129,OZ92136,OZ92152,OZ92159,OZ92160,
OZ92165,OZ92167,OZ92169,OZ92191,OZ92305,OZ92306,OZ92307,OZ92316,
OZ92344,OZ92349,OZ92383,OZ92428,OZ92443,OZ92459,OZ92485,OZ92489,
OZ92520,OZ92525,OZ92530,OZ92545,OZ92566,OZ92570,OZ92596,OZ92610,
OZ92622,OZ92627,OZ92670,OZ92705,OZ92717,OZ92747,OZ92766,OZ92779,
OZ92801,OZ92803,OZ92809,OZ92816,OZ92822,OZ92843,OZ92852,OZ92855,
OZ92862,OZ92874,OZ92918,OZ92933,OZ92960,OZ93017,OZ93020,OZ93021,
OZ93045,OZ93047,OZ93049,OZ93060,OZ93065,OZ93067,OZ93078,OZ93102,

OZ93132,OZ93141,OZ93210,OZ93214,OZ93215,OZ93215,OZ93218,OZ93218,
OZ93236,OZ93252,OZ93294,OZ93304,OZ93324,OZ93335,OZ93362,OZ93373,
OZ93383,OZ93433,OZ93435,OZ93461,OZ93482,OZ93501,OZ93576,OZ93578,
OZ93579,OZ93639,OZ93646,OZ93657,OZ93658,OZ93659,OZ93723,OZ93727,
OZ93761,OZ93765,OZ93851,OZ93871,OZ93872,OZ93878,OZ93915,OZ93925,
OZ93933,OZ93945,OZ93982,OZ94048,OZ94054,OZ94089,OZ94112,OZ94137,
OZ94138,OZ94161,OZ94186,OZ94257,OZ94261,OZ94278,OZ94303,OZ94309,
OZ94334,OZ94337,OZ94338,OZ94340,OZ94342,OZ94346,OZ94369,OZ94404,
OZ94414,OZ94450,OZ94464,OZ94477,OZ94480,OZ94482,OZ94501,OZ94520,
OZ94538,OZ94551,OZ94554,OZ94560,OZ94567,OZ94582,OZ94601,OZ94608,
OZ94614,OZ94654,OZ94669,OZ94717,OZ94731,OZ94756,OZ94767,OZ94794,
OZ94803,OZ94805,OZ94904,OZ94908,OZ94916,OZ94918,OZ94919,OZ94933,
OZ94993,OZ94996,OZ95012,OZ95034,OZ95039,OZ95048,OZ95068,OZ95090,
OZ95107,OZ95129,OZ95152,OZ95186,OZ95201,OZ95212,OZ95238,OZ95242,
OZ95257,OZ95260,OZ95289,OZ95300,OZ95301,OZ95309,OZ95310,OZ95346,
OZ95352,OZ95373,OZ95411,OZ95413,OZ95417,OZ95423,OZ95458,OZ95571,
OZ95578,OZ95609,OZ95666,OZ95681,OZ95689,OZ95702,OZ95724,OZ95748,
OZ95751,OZ95788,OZ95814,OZ95822,OZ95851,OZ95895,OZ95896,OZ95953,
OZ95978,OZ95991,OZ95992,OZ96000,OZ96001,OZ96003,OZ96004,OZ96006,
OZ96040,OZ96043,OZ96068,OZ96069,OZ96075,OZ96115,OZ96126,OZ96127,
OZ96128,OZ96142,OZ96163,OZ96178,OZ96186,OZ96205,OZ96213,OZ96220,
OZ96275,OZ96278,OZ96285,OZ96287,OZ96300,OZ96321,OZ96336,OZ96356,
OZ96363,OZ96400,OZ96417,OZ96418,OZ96442,OZ96452,OZ96460,OZ96462,
OZ96470,OZ96510,OZ96541,OZ96545,OZ96560,OZ96568,OZ96570,OZ96572,
OZ96596,OZ96606,OZ96607,OZ96618,OZ96626,OZ96646,OZ96649,OZ96666,
OZ96667,OZ96671,OZ96695,OZ96696,OZ96745,OZ96767,OZ96779,OZ96837,
OZ96859,OZ96862,OZ96917,OZ96919,OZ96920,OZ96921,OZ96952,OZ96962,
OZ97004,OZ97006,OZ97024,OZ97024,OZ97066,OZ97095,OZ97097,OZ97101,
OZ97105,OZ97108,OZ97113,OZ97129,OZ97145,OZ97152,OZ97153,OZ97154,
OZ97178,OZ97209,OZ97221,OZ97226,OZ97241,OZ97246,OZ97253,OZ97260,
OZ97264,OZ97267,OZ97283,OZ97294,OZ97295,OZ97305,OZ97314,OZ97316,
OZ97328,OZ97330,OZ97331,OZ97332,OZ97339,OZ97340,OZ97342,OZ97351,
OZ97359,OZ97362,OZ97376,OZ97385,OZ97394,OZ97407,OZ97409,OZ97435,
OZ97438,OZ97441,OZ97450,OZ97463,OZ97499,OZ97509,OZ97510,OZ97511,
OZ97522,OZ97556,OZ97561,OZ97577,OZ97595,OZ97608,OZ97623,OZ97625,
OZ97631,OZ97633,OZ97665,OZ97696,OZ97736,OZ97743,OZ97787,OZ97804,
OZ97812,OZ97814,OZ97819,OZ97821,OZ97825,OZ97839,OZ97841,OZ97842,
OZ97865,OZ97867,OZ97919,OZ97930,OZ97931,OZ97965,OZ97967,OZ97972,
OZ97986,OZ97998,OZ98081,OZ98097,OZ98103

Appendix G. MVS/XA DFP Integrated PTF List

G.1.1 HDP2230 PTF List

Listed below is a list of PTFs included in MVS/XA DFP 2.3.0:

PTF#	FMID	PUT	PTF#	FMID	PUT
UZ82983	HDP2230	8702	UZ84727	HDP2230	8702
UZ82991	HDP2230	8702	UZ84723	HDP2230	8702
UZ82925	HDP2230	8702	UZ84725	HDP2230	8702
UZ82949	HDP2230	8702	UZ84748	HDP2230	8702
UZ83052	HDP2230	8702	UZ84717	HDP2230	8702
UZ83055	HDP2230	8702	UZ84721	HDP2230	8702
UZ83056	HDP2230	8702	UZ84710	HDP2230	8702
UZ83030	HDP2230	8702	UZ84698	HDP2230	8702
UZ83134	HDP2230	8702	UZ84695	HDP2230	8702
UZ82763	HDP2230	8702	UZ84692	HDP2230	8702
UZ82767	HDP2230	8702	UZ84686	HDP2230	8702
UZ82735	HDP2230	8702	UZ84677	HDP2230	8702
UZ82736	HDP2230	8702	UZ84674	HDP2230	8702
UZ82737	HDP2230	8702	UZ84753	HDP2230	8702
UZ82738	HDP2230	8702	UZ84643	HDP2230	8702
UZ82739	HDP2230	8702	UZ84619	HDP2230	8702
UZ82740	HDP2230	8702	UZ84615	HDP2230	8702
UZ82741	HDP2230	8702	UZ84636	HDP2230	8702
UZ82742	HDP2230	8702	UZ84630	HDP2230	8702
UZ82743	HDP2230	8702	UZ84576	HDP2230	8702
UZ82810	HDP2230	8702	UZ84568	HDP2230	8702
UZ82813	HDP2230	8702	UZ84588	HDP2230	8702
UZ82814	HDP2230	8702	UZ84891	HDP2230	8702
UZ82815	HDP2230	8702	UZ84906	HDP2230	8702
UZ82816	HDP2230	8702	UZ84899	HDP2230	8702
UZ82817	HDP2230	8702	UZ84938	HDP2230	8702
UZ82818	HDP2230	8702	UZ84934	HDP2230	8702
UZ82819	HDP2230	8702	UZ84914	HDP2230	8702
UZ82832	HDP2230	8702	UZ84941	HDP2230	8702
UZ82792	HDP2230	8702	UZ84945	HDP2230	8703
UZ82794	HDP2230	8702	UZ84964	HDP2230	8702
UZ82799	HDP2230	8702	UZ84956	HDP2230	8702
UZ82856	HDP2230	8702	UZ84961	HDP2230	8703
UZ82857	HDP2230	8702	UZ84967	HDP2230	8702
UZ82853	HDP2230	8702	UZ84797	HDP2230	8702
UZ83491	HDP2230	8703	UZ84791	HDP2230	8702
UZ83521	HDP2230	8702	UZ84793	HDP2230	8702
UZ83516	HDP2230	8702	UZ84770	HDP2230	8702
UZ83426	HDP2230	8702	UZ84762	HDP2230	8702
UZ83419	HDP2230	8702	UZ84809	HDP2230	8702
UZ83466	HDP2230	8702	UZ84805	HDP2230	8702
UZ83454	HDP2230	8702	UZ84801	HDP2230	8702
UZ83601	HDP2230	8702	UZ84838	HDP2230	8702
UZ83609	HDP2230	8702	UZ84455	HDP2230	8702
UZ83579	HDP2230	8702	UZ84452	HDP2230	8702
UZ83557	HDP2230	8702	UZ84407	HDP2230	8702
UZ83563	HDP2230	8702	UZ84405	HDP2230	8702
UZ83565	HDP2230	8702	UZ84402	HDP2230	8702
UZ83302	HDP2230	8702	UZ84391	HDP2230	8702
UZ83292	HDP2230	8702	UZ84443	HDP2230	8702
UZ83390	HDP2230	8702	UZ84441	HDP2230	8702
UZ83361	HDP2230	8702	UZ84415	HDP2230	8702
UZ83412	HDP2230	8702	UZ84419	HDP2230	8702
UZ83271	HDP2230	8702	UZ84484	HDP2230	8702

PTF#	FMID	PUT	PTF#	FMID	PUT
UZ84482	HDP2230	8702	UY07756	HDP2230	8704
UZ84479	HDP2230	8702	UY07771	HDP2230	8704
UZ84512	HDP2230	8702	UY07768	HDP2230	8704
UZ84541	HDP2230	8702	UY07792	HDP2230	8704
UZ84544	HDP2230	8703	UY07794	HDP2230	8704
UZ84523	HDP2230	8702	UY07795	HDP2230	8704
UZ84529	HDP2230	8702	UY07876	HDP2230	8704
UZ84162	HDP2230	8702	UY08136	HDP2230	8704
UZ84146	HDP2230	8702	UY08138	HDP2230	8704
UZ84346	HDP2230	8702	UY08163	HDP2230	8704
UZ84342	HDP2230	8702	UY08125	HDP2230	8704
UZ84339	HDP2230	8702	UY08100	HDP2230	8704
UZ84323	HDP2230	8702	UY08094	HDP2230	8704
UZ83888	HDP2230	8702	UY08067	HDP2230	8704
UZ83870	HDP2230	8702	UY08010	HDP2230	8704
UZ83846	HDP2230	8702	UY08028	HDP2230	8704
UZ83847	HDP2230	8702	UY08038	HDP2230	8704
UZ83823	HDP2230	8702	UY07889	HDP2230	8704
UZ83794	HDP2230	8702	UY07919	HDP2230	8704
UZ83797	HDP2230	8702	UY07945	HDP2230	8704
UZ83762	HDP2230	8702	UY07933	HDP2230	8704
UZ83772	HDP2230	8702	UY06198	HDP2230	8703
UZ83712	HDP2230	8702	UY06184	HDP2230	8703
UZ83701	HDP2230	8702	UY06196	HDP2230	8703
UZ83685	HDP2230	8702	UY06182	HDP2230	8703
UZ83734	HDP2230	8702	UY06203	HDP2230	8703
UZ83633	HDP2230	8702	UY06126	HDP2230	8703
UZ83626	HDP2230	8702	UY06029	HDP2230	8703
UZ83627	HDP2230	8702	UY06276	HDP2230	8703
UZ83680	HDP2230	8702	UY06212	HDP2230	8703
UZ83682	HDP2230	8702	UY06246	HDP2230	8703
UZ83674	HDP2230	8702	UY06251	HDP2230	8703
UZ83676	HDP2230	8702	UY06403	HDP2230	8703
UZ83672	HDP2230	8702	UY06398	HDP2230	8703
UZ83900	HDP2230	8702	UY06417	HDP2230	8703
UZ84012	HDP2230	8702	UY06422	HDP2230	8704
UY08302	HDP2230	8704	UY06423	HDP2230	8704
UY08278	HDP2230	8704	UY06424	HDP2230	8703
UY08283	HDP2230	8704	UY06436	HDP2230	8703
UY08186	HDP2230	8704	UY06442	HDP2230	8703
UY08239	HDP2230	8704	UY06440	HDP2230	8703
UY08235	HDP2230	8704	UY06446	HDP2230	8703
UY07501	HDP2230	8704	UY06382	HDP2230	8703
UY07511	HDP2230	8704	UY06395	HDP2230	8703
UY07460	HDF2230	8704	UY06450	HDP2230	8704
UY07465	HDP2230	8704	UY06451	HDP2230	8704
UY07473	HDP2230	8704	UY06454	HDP2230	8704
UY07493	HDP2230	8704	UY06467	HDP2230	8703
UY07498	HDP2230	8704	UY06460	HDP2230	8703
UY07428	HDP2230	8704	UY06498	HDP2230	8703
UY07448	HDP2230	8704	UY06504	HDP2230	8703
UY07421	HDP2230	8704	UY06516	HDP2230	8703
UY07417	HDP2230	8704	UY06580	HDP2230	8704
UY07406	HDP2230	8704	UY06576	HDP2230	8704
UY07386	HDP2230	8704	UY06577	HDP2230	8704
UY07380	HDP2230	8704	UY06578	HDP2230	8704
UY07340	HDP2230	8704	UY06690	HDP2230	8703
UY07317	HDP2230	8704	UY06717	HDP2230	8704
UY07315	HDP2230	8704	UY06710	HDP2230	8703
UY07152	HDP2230	8704	UY06705	HDP2230	8704
UY07245	HDP2230	8704	UY06720	HDP2230	8703
UY07251	HDP2230	8704	UY06848	HDP2230	8704
UY07254	HDP2230	8704	UY06768	HDP2230	8703
UY07741	HDP2230	8704	UY06766	HDP2230	8703
UY07745	HDP2230	8704	UY06842	HDP2230	8703
UY07748	HDP2230	8704	UY06822	HDP2230	8703
UY07643	HDP2230	8704	UY06827	HDP2230	8703
UY07665	HDP2230	8704	UY07133	HDP2230	8704
UY07662	HDP2230	8704	UY07052	HDP2230	8704
UY07710	HDP2230	8704	UY07042	HDP2230	8704
UY07829	HDP2230	8704	UY07068	HDP2230	8704
UY07825	HDP2230	8704	UY07056	HDP2230	8704
UY07752	HDP2230	8704	UY07064	HDP2230	8704

PTF#	FMID	PUT
UY06942	HDP2230	8704
UY06938	HDP2230	8704
UY06896	HDP2230	8703
UY06901	HDP2230	8704
UY01266	HDP2230	8702
UY01288	HDP2230	8702
UY01357	HDP2230	8702
UY01344	HDP2230	8702
UY01391	HDP2230	8702
UY01383	HDP2230	8702
UY01366	HDP2230	8702
UY01223	HDP2230	8702
UY01567	HDP2230	8702
UY01534	HDP2230	8702
UY01544	HDP2230	8702
UY01540	HDP2230	8702
UY01510	HDP2230	8702
UY01507	HDP2230	8702
UY01522	HDP2230	8702
UY01592	HDP2230	8702
UY01433	HDP2230	8702
UY01415	HDP2230	8702
UY01420	HDP2230	8703
UY01736	HDP2230	8702
UY01747	HDP2230	8702
UY01650	HDP2230	8702
UY01635	HDP2230	8702
UY01625	HDP2230	8702
UY08486	HDP2230	8704
UY08545	HDP2230	8704
UY08469	HDP2230	8704
UY08409	HDP2230	8704
UY04910	HDP2230	8702
UY04913	HDP2230	8702
UY04916	HDP2230	8702
UY04993	HDP2230	8703
UY04964	HDP2230	8702
UY04959	HDP2230	8702
UY04970	HDP2230	8702
UY05003	HDP2230	8702
UY05004	HDP2230	8702
UY05007	HDP2230	8702
UY05013	HDP2230	8702
UY04885	HDP2230	8702
UY04822	HDP2230	8702
UY04824	HDP2230	8702
UY04876	HDP2230	8702
UY04831	HDP2230	8702
UY04806	HDP2230	8702
UY04541	HDP2230	8702
UY04520	HDP2230	8702
UY04516	HDP2230	8702
UY04565	HDP2230	8702
UY04580	HDP2230	8702
UY04570	HDP2230	8702
UY04577	HDP2230	8702
UY04585	HDP2230	8702
UY04609	HDP2230	8702
UY04625	HDP2230	8702
UY04634	HDP2230	8702
UY04670	HDP2230	8702
UY04664	HDP2230	8702
UY04696	HDP2230	8702
UY04689	HDP2230	8702
UY04678	HDP2230	8702
UY04721	HDP2230	8702
UY04722	HDP2230	8702
UY04752	HDP2230	8702
UY04754	HDP2230	8702
UY05297	HDP2230	8703
UY05292	HDP2230	8703
UY05289	HDP2230	8703
UY05482	HDP2230	8703
UY05514	HDP2230	8703
UY05410	HDP2230	8703
UY05418	HDP2230	8703
UY05432	HDP2230	8703
UY05457	HDP2230	8703
UY05448	HDP2230	8703
UY05441	HDP2230	8703
UY05463	HDP2230	8703
UY05048	HDP2230	8702
UY05041	HDP2230	8702
UY05026	HDP2230	8702
UY05018	HDP2230	8702
UY05019	HDP2230	8702
UY05028	HDP2230	8702
UY05032	HDP2230	8703
UY05127	HDP2230	8702
UY05177	HDP2230	8703
UY05214	HDP2230	8703
UY05279	HDP2230	8702
UY03568	HDP2230	8702
UY03529	HDP2230	8702
UY03479	HDP2230	8702
UY03477	HDP2230	8702
UY03474	HDP2230	8702
UY03486	HDP2230	8702
UY03686	HDP2230	8702
UY03680	HDP2230	8702
UY03670	HDP2230	8702
UY03706	HDP2230	8702
UY03925	HDP2230	8702
UY03916	HDP2230	8702
UY03913	HDP2230	8702
UY03969	HDP2230	8702
UY03841	HDP2230	8702
UY03847	HDP2230	8702
UY03731	HDP2230	8702
UY04229	HDP2230	8702
UY04142	HDP2230	8702
UY04127	HDP2230	8702
UY04148	HDP2230	8702
UY04175	HDP2230	8702
UY04182	HDP2230	8702
UY04179	HDP2230	8702
UY04208	HDP2230	8702
UY04209	HDP2230	8702
UY04109	HDP2230	8702
UY04062	HDP2230	8702
UY04058	HDP2230	8702
UY04036	HDP2230	8702
UY04000	HDP2230	8702
UY04004	HDP2230	8702
UY04405	HDP2230	8702
UY04406	HDP2230	8702
UY04403	HDP2230	8702
UY04395	HDP2230	8702
UY04464	HDP2230	8702
UY04499	HDP2230	8702
UY04290	HDP2230	8702
UY04239	HDP2230	8702
UY04250	HDP2230	8702
UY04338	HDP2230	8702
UY04318	HDP2230	8702
UY04294	HDP2230	8702
UY01851	HDP2230	8702
UY01846	HDP2230	8702
UY01925	HDP2230	8702
UY01922	HDP2230	8702
UY01911	HDP2230	8702
UY01895	HDP2230	8702
UY01896	HDP2230	8702
UY01892	HDP2230	8702
UY02169	HDP2230	8702
UY02081	HDP2230	8702

PTF#	FMID	PUT	PTF#	FMID	PUT
UY02079	HDP2230	8702	UY03254	HDP2230	8702
UY02151	HDP2230	8702	UY03140	HDP2230	8702
UY02161	HDP2230	8702	UY03141	HDP2230	8702
UY02144	HDP2230	8702	UY03372	HDP2230	8702
UY02043	HDP2230	8702	UY03370	HDP2230	8702
UY02068	HDP2230	8702	UY03312	HDP2230	8702
UY01992	HDP2230	8702	UY03327	HDP2230	8702
UY01989	HDP2230	8702	UY03333	HDP2230	8702
UY02029	HDP2230	8702	UY03294	HDP2230	8702
UY02015	HDP2230	8702	UY03263	HDP2230	8702
UY02315	HDP2230	8702	UY03264	HDP2230	8702
UY02348	HDP2230	8702	UY03258	HDP2230	8702
UY02290	HDP2230	8702	UY03380	HDP2230	8702
UY02262	HDP2230	8702	UY03387	HDP2230	8702
UY02276	HDP2230	8702	UY03406	HDP2230	8702
UY02272	HDP2230	8702	UY03400	HDP2230	8702
UY02245	HDP2230	8702	UY03396	HDP2230	8702
UY02204	HDP2230	8702	UY03462	HDP2230	8702
UY02199	HDP2230	8702	UY03468	HDP2230	8702
UY02211	HDP2230	8702	UY03453	HDP2230	8702
UY02572	HDP2230	8702	UY05981	HDP2230	8703
UY02569	HDP2230	8702	UY05894	HDP2230	8703
UY02566	HDP2230	8702	UY05888	HDP2230	8703
UY02547	HDP2230	8702	UY05885	HDP2230	8703
UY02556	HDP2230	8702	UY05920	HDP2230	8703
UY02561	HDP2230	8702	UY05956	HDP2230	8703
UY02980	HDP2230	8703	UY05819	HDP2230	8703
UY03005	HDP2230	8702	UY05815	HDP2230	8703
UY03025	HDP2230	8702	UY05810	HDP2230	8703
UY02853	HDP2230	8702	UY05765	HDP2230	8703
UY02834	HDP2230	8702	UY05793	HDP2230	8703
UY02628	HDP2230	8702	UY05789	HDP2230	8703
UY02631	HDP2230	8702	UY05647	HDP2230	8703
UY02699	HDP2230	8702	UY05670	HDP2230	8703
UY02775	HDP2230	8702	UY05673	HDP2230	8703
UY02718	HDP2230	8702	UY05678	HDP2230	8703
UY02715	HDP2230	8702	UY05705	HDP2230	8703
UY02724	HDP2230	8702	UY05701	HDP2230	8703
UY02729	HDP2230	8702	UY05723	HDP2230	8703

G.1.2 JDP2325 PTF List

PTF#	FMID	PUT	PTF#	FMID	PUT
UY04152	JDP2325	8702	UY01365	JDP2325	8702
UY04066	JDP2325	8702	UY08037	JDP2325	8704
UY04408	JDP2325	8702	UZ83732	JDP2325	8702
UY05200	JDP2325	8702	UZ83695	JDP2325	8702
UY05288	JDP2325	8703	UZ84790	JDP2325	8702

Appendix H. SMP Modification Control Statements

H.1 FUNCTION(HDP2230)

The SMP install logic for HDP2230 follows. The entire set of SMP modification control statements can be obtained by printing the first file of the distribution tape.

```
++FUNCTION  (HDP2230) REWORK(1987134)   FILES( 3 )
   /*
   5665-XA2 (C) COPYRIGHT IBM CORP 1982,1987
   LICENSED MATERIAL - PROGRAM PROPERTY OF IBM
  */
.
++VER   (Z038)
        DELETE(EDM1102,EDS1102,EPM1102,EST1102,EUT1102,FDM1133,FDS1122,
        FDS1133,FDS1143,FDS1243,FDS1443,FDS1543,FUT1133,HDP1102,
        HDP2210,HDQ1102,JDM1112,JDM1113,JDM1116,JDM1122,JDM1132,
        JDM1134,JDM1136,JDM1137,JDM1138,JDM1139,JDM1141,JDM1142,
        JDM1145,JDP1110,JDP1111,JDP1112,JDP2220,JDP2221,JDP2222,
        JDQ1110,JDS1112,JDS1125,JDS1134,JDS1136,JDS1137,JDS1139,
        JDS1140,JDS1145,JPM1137,JST1113,JUT1112,JUT1113,JUT1134,
        JUT1137,JUT1139,JUT1145,JDP2223,JDP1113,JDQ1112)
        VERSION(EBB1102,ESU1102)
       SUP   (AY00005,AY00057,AY01159,AY01161,AY01167,AY01176,
              AY01178,AY01188,AY01190,AY01226,AY01228,AY01235,
              AY01238,AY01295,AY01300,AY01306,AY01308,AY01310,
              AY01312,AY01315,AY01316,AY01356,AY01362,AY01371,
              AY01423,AY01446,AY01458,AY01479,AY01507,AY01524,
              AY01553,AY01555,AY01564,AY01569,AY01580,AY01602,
              AY01654,AY01679,AY01693,AY01716,AY01726,AY01736,
              AY01737,AY01741,AY01752,AY01757,AY01769,AY01781,
              AY01787,AY01806,AY01807,AY01833,AY01834,AY01836,
              AY01844,AY01862,AY01906,AY01912,AY01921,AY01923,
              AY01925,AY01934,AY01938,AY01962,AY01996,AY01997,
              AY02002,AY02012,AY02013,AY02014,AY02049,AY02055,
              AY02056,AY02087,AY02094,AY02095,AY02127,AY02138,
              AY02148,AY02161,AY02167,AY02188,AY02190,AY02191,
              AY02216,AY02243,AY02262,AY02306,AY02313,AY02317,
              AY02318,AY02323,AY02345,AY02346,AY02355,AY02364,
              AY02366,AY02378,AY02387,AY02388,AY02400,AY02407,
              AY02410,AY02435,AY02436,AY02443,AY02447,AY02455,
              AY02468,AY02475,AY02496,AY02500,AY02506,AY02551,
              AY02565,AY02573,AY02579,AY02596,AY02600,AY02602,
              AY02603,AY02609,AY02625,AY02629,AY02658,AY02662,
              AY02690,AY02693,AY02710,AY02719,AY02721,AY02724,
              AY02757,AY02759,AY02771,AY02786,AY02826,AY02827,
              AY02837,AY02861,AY02865,AY02867,AY02868,AY02885,
              AY02894,AY02902,AY02903,AY02904,AY02909,AY02920,
              AY02955,AY02958,AY02963,AY02980,AY03013,AY03026,
              AY03052,AY03120,AY03157,AY03164,AY03187,AY03189,
              AY03190,AY03192,AY03206,AY03209,AY03210,AY03217,
              AY03218,AY03219,AY03240,AY03241,AY03258,AY03281,
              AY03283,AY03319,AY03327,AY03338,AY03344,AY03349,
              AY03350,AY03359,AY03374,AY03375,AY03377,AY03401,
              AY03403,AY03409,AY03429,AY03452,AY03454,AY03486,
              AY03487,AY03488,AY03493,AY03510,AY03525,AY03536,
              AY03537,AY03554,AY03559,AY03564,AY03572,AY03580,
              AY03595,AY03648,AY03671,AY03672,AY03673,AY03678,
              AY03681,AY03685,AY03696,AY03724,AY03728,AY03741,
              AY03766,AY03767,AY03812,AY03820,AY03833,AY03836,
              AY03846,AY03853,AY03879,AY03881,AY03884,AY03901,
              AY03905,AY03916,AY03935,AY03942,AY03970,AY03991,
              AY03992,AY03994,AY03995,AY03996,AY03997,AY03998,
              AY03999,AY04000,AY04002,AY04009,AY04010,AY04011,
              AY04013,AY04014,AY04015,AY04017,AY04018,AY04020,
              AY04022,AY04023,AY04024,AY04026,AY04027,AY04028,
              AY04029,AY04032,AY04033,AY04034,AY04035,AY04067,
              AY04075,AY04094,AY04095,AY04096,AY04097,AY04102,
              AY04117,AY04145,AY04150,AY04167,AY04168,AY04201,
```

AY04211,AY04227,AY04240,AY04255,AY04266,AY04267,
AY04292,AY04310,AY04323,AY04331,AY04343,AY04356,
AY04381,AY04382,AY04388,AY04418,AY04421,AY04442,
AY04462,AY04464,AY04476,AY04482,AY04504,AY04505,
AY04507,AY04515,AY04532,AY04533,AY04547,AY04556,
AY04563,AY04571,AY04575,AY04604,AY04605,AY04617,
AY04627,AY04637,AY04653,AY04654,AY04661,AY04688,
AY04707,AY04717,AY04735,AY04778,AY04874,AY04875,
AY04876,AY04900,AY04931,AY04942,AY04962,AY04964,
AY04965,AY04966,AY05026,AY05043,AY05061,AY05069,
AY05084,AY05109,AY05110,AY05123,AY05132,AY05151,
AY05167,AY05185,AY05610,AY05633,AY05676,AY05723,
AY05725,AY05762,AY05798,AY05800,AY05830,AY05879,
AY05911,AY05946,AY05986,AY06044,AZ88431,AZ92766,
AZ94048,AZ94054,AZ94309,AZ94501,AZ94731,AZ94871,
AZ95090,AZ95257,AZ95411,AZ95578,AZ95587,AZ95724,
AZ95822,AZ95896,AZ95978,AZ95992,AZ96043,AZ96075,
AZ96115,AZ96126,AZ96142,AZ96163,AZ96205,AZ96213,
AZ96216,AZ96275,AZ96278,AZ96287,AZ96300,AZ96303,
AZ96321,AZ96356,AZ96377,AZ96400,AZ96442,AZ96457,
AZ96460,AZ96462,AZ96470,AZ96510,AZ96541,AZ96545,
AZ96560,AZ96570,AZ96596,AZ96607,AZ96618,AZ96633,
AZ96649,AZ96666,AZ96667,AZ96677,AZ96695,AZ96742,
AZ96745,AZ96755,AZ96764,AZ96767,AZ96779,AZ96798,
AZ96837,AZ96859,AZ96862,AZ96952,AZ96955,AZ96962,
AZ97004,AZ97028,AZ97066,AZ97095,AZ97097,AZ97101,
AZ97105,AZ97106,AZ97108,AZ97111,AZ97113,AZ97129,
AZ97145,AZ97152,AZ97153,AZ97154,AZ97160,AZ97178,
AZ97184,AZ97188,AZ97195,AZ97221,AZ97241,AZ97246,
AZ97253,AZ97260,AZ97264,AZ97267,AZ97283,AZ97294,
AZ97295,AZ97305,AZ97314,AZ97316,AZ97328,AZ97330,
AZ97332,AZ97340,AZ97347,AZ97351,AZ97359,AZ97362,
AZ97376,AZ97385,AZ97394,AZ97407,AZ97409,AZ97432,
AZ97435,AZ97438,AZ97441,AZ97450,AZ97451,AZ97453,
AZ97463,AZ97470,AZ97499,AZ97509,AZ97510,AZ97511,
AZ97522,AZ97529,AZ97556,AZ97559,AZ97561,AZ97577,
AZ97581,AZ97582,AZ97595,AZ97596,AZ97597,AZ97598,
AZ97607,AZ97608,AZ97617,AZ97622,AZ97624,AZ97625,
AZ97631,AZ97633,AZ97663,AZ97665,AZ97696,AZ97712,
AZ97736,AZ97743,AZ97760,AZ97787,AZ97800,AZ97812,
AZ97814,AZ97819,AZ97821,AZ97839,AZ97845,AZ97861,
AZ97865,AZ97867,AZ97870,AZ97873,AZ97874,AZ97893,
AZ97904,AZ97910,AZ97919,AZ97924,AZ97926,AZ97928,
AZ97930,AZ97931,AZ97934,AZ97940,AZ97942,AZ97946,
AZ97951,AZ97955,AZ97956,AZ97957,AZ97959,AZ97965,
AZ97967,AZ97973,AZ97987,AZ97992,AZ97998,AZ98002,
AZ98004,AZ98031,AZ98038,AZ98044,AZ98048,AZ98052,
AZ98054,AZ98056,AZ98067,AZ98074,AZ98077,AZ98081,
AZ98088,AZ98089,AZ98095,AZ98096,AZ98097,AZ98098,
AZ98100,AZ98102,AZ98103,AZ98104,BY04505,
UY01223,UY01266,UY01288,UY01344,UY01357,UY01366,
UY01383,UY01391,UY01415,UY01420,UY01433,UY01507,
UY01510,UY01522,UY01534,UY01540,UY01544,UY01567,
UY01592,UY01625,UY01635,UY01650,UY01736,UY01747,
UY01846,UY01851,UY01892,UY01895,UY01896,UY01911,
UY01922,UY01925,UY01989,UY01992,UY02015,UY02029,
UY02043,UY02068,UY02079,UY02081,UY02144,UY02151,
UY02161,UY02163,UY02169,UY02199,UY02204,UY02211,
UY02245,UY02262,UY02272,UY02276,UY02290,UY02315,
UY02348,UY02356,UY02547,UY02556,UY02561,UY02566,
UY02569,UY02572,UY02628,UY02631,UY02699,UY02715,
UY02718,UY02724,UY02729,UY02775,UY02834,UY02853,
UY02920,UY02926,UY02980,UY03005,UY03025,UY03140,
UY03141,UY03254,UY03258,UY03263,UY03264,UY03294,
UY03312,UY03327,UY03333,UY03370,UY03372,UY03380,
UY03387,UY03396,UY03400,UY03406,UY03453,UY03462,
UY03468,UY03474,UY03477,UY03479,UY03486,UY03529,
UY03568,UY03670,UY03680,UY03686,UY03706,UY03731,
UY03841,UY03847,UY03913,UY03916,UY03925,UY03969,
UY04000,UY04004,UY04036,UY04058,UY04062,UY04109,
UY04127,UY04142,UY04148,UY04175,UY04179,UY04182,
UY04208,UY04209,UY04229,UY04239,UY04250,UY04290,
UY04294,UY04318,UY04338,UY04395,UY04403,UY04405,
UY04406,UY04453,UY04455,UY04464,UY04499,UY04516,
UY04520,UY04541,UY04565,UY04570,UY04577,UY04580,

```
                UY04585,UY04609,UY04625,UY04634,UY04664,UY04670,
                UY04678,UY04689,UY04696,UY04702,UY04721,UY04722,
                UY04752,UY04754,UY04758,UY04762,UY04806,UY04822,
                UY04824,UY04831,UY04836,UY04885,UY04910,UY04913,
                UY04916,UY04959,UY04964,UY04970,UY04993,UY05003,
                UY05004,UY05007,UY05013,UY05018,UY05019,UY05026,
                UY05028,UY05032,UY05041,UY05048,UY05093,UY05127,
                UY05177,UY05214,UY05279,UY05289,UY05292,UY05297,
                UY05410,UY05418,UY05432,UY05441,UY05448,UY05457,
                UY05463,UY05482,UY05514,UY05647,UY05670,UY05673,
                UY05678,UY05701,UY05705,UY05723,UY05765,UY05789,
                UY05793,UY05810,UY05815,UY05819,UY05885,UY05888,
                UY05894,UY05920,UY05956,UY05981,UY06029,UY06126,
                UY06182,UY06184,UY06196,UY06198,UY06203,UY06212,
                UY06246,UY06251,UY06276,UY06382,UY06395,UY06398,
                UY06403,UY06417,UY06422,UY06423,UY06424,UY06436,
                UY06440,UY06442,UY06446,UY06450,UY06451,UY06454,
                UY06460,UY06467,UY06485,UY06498,UY06504,UY06516,
                UY06576,UY06577,UY06578,UY06580,UY06633,UY06690,
                UY06705,UY06710,UY06717,UY06720,UY06766,UY06768,
                UY06822,UY06827,UY06842,UY06848,UY06851,UY06896,
                UY06901,UY06938,UY06942,UY07042,UY07052,UY07056,
                UY07064,UY07068,UY07084,UY07133,UY07152,UY07245,
                UY07251,UY07254,UY07315,UY07317,UY07340,UY07351,
                UY07380,UY07386,UY07406,UY07417,UY07421,UY07428,
                UY07448,UY07460,UY07465,UY07473,UY07493,UY07498,
                UY07501,UY07511,UY07643,UY07662,UY07665,UY07710,
                UY07741,UY07745,UY07748,UY07752,UY07756,UY07768,
                UY07771,UY07792,UY07794,UY07795,UY07825,UY07829,
                UY07876,UY07889,UY07919,UY07933,UY07945,UY08010,
                UY08019,UY08028,UY08038,UY08067,UY08094,UY08100,
                UY08125,UY08136,UY08138,UY08163,UY08186,UY08235,
                UY08239,UY08278,UY08283,UY08302,UY08394,UY08409,
                UY08466,UY08469,UY08486,UY08545,UY08571,UY08590,
                UY08606,UY08678,UY08703,UY08709,UY08711,UY08747,
                UY08758,UY08759,UY08772,UY08817,UY08830,UY08833,
                UY08875,UY08886,UY08898,UY08902,UZ41557,UZ82735,
                UZ82736,UZ82737,UZ82738,UZ82739,UZ82740,UZ82741,
                UZ82742,UZ82743,UZ82763,UZ82767,UZ82792,UZ82794,
                UZ82799,UZ82810,UZ82813,UZ82814,UZ82815,UZ82816,
                UZ82817,UZ82818,UZ82819,UZ82832,UZ82853,UZ82856,
                UZ82857,UZ82917,UZ82925,UZ82949,UZ82983,UZ82991,
                UZ83030,UZ83052,UZ83055,UZ83056,UZ83134,UZ83271,
                UZ83292,UZ83302,UZ83361,UZ83390,UZ83412,UZ83419,
                UZ83426,UZ83454,UZ83466,UZ83491,UZ83507,UZ83516,
                UZ83521,UZ83557,UZ83563,UZ83565,UZ83579,UZ83601,
                UZ83609,UZ83626,UZ83627,UZ83633,UZ83672,UZ83674,
                UZ83676,UZ83680,UZ83682,UZ83685,UZ83701,UZ83712,
                UZ83734,UZ83762,UZ83772,UZ83794,UZ83797,UZ83823,
                UZ83846,UZ83847,UZ83870,UZ83888,UZ83900,UZ84012,
                UZ84146,UZ84162,UZ84323,UZ84339,UZ84342,UZ84346,
                UZ84391,UZ84402,UZ84405,UZ84407,UZ84415,UZ84419,
                UZ84441,UZ84443,UZ84452,UZ84455,UZ84479,UZ84482,
                UZ84484,UZ84512,UZ84523,UZ84529,UZ84541,UZ84544,
                UZ84568,UZ84576,UZ84588,UZ84615,UZ84619,UZ84630,
                UZ84636,UZ84643,UZ84674,UZ84677,UZ84686,UZ84690,
                UZ84692,UZ84695,UZ84698,UZ84710,UZ84717,UZ84721,
                UZ84723,UZ84725,UZ84727,UZ84748,UZ84753,UZ84762,
                UZ84770,UZ84791,UZ84793,UZ84797,UZ84801,UZ84805,
                UZ84809,UZ84838,UZ84891,UZ84899,UZ84906,UZ84910,
                UZ84914,UZ84934,UZ84938,UZ84941,UZ84945,UZ84956,
                UZ84961,UZ84964,UZ84967,UZ84973)                    .
++IF  FMID   (HHM2202)  THEN
      REQ    (UY08891)                                             .
++IF  FMID   (JBB2220)  THEN
      REQ    (UY90007)                                             .
++IF  FMID   (JDP2325)  THEN
      REQ    (UY05288,UY08037)                                     .
```

H.2 FUNCTION(JDP2325)

The SMP install logic for JDP2325 follows. The entire set of SMP modification control statements can be obtained by printing the file from the distribution tape.

```
++FUNCTION(JDP2325)                    FILES( 1 )
 .
++VER(Z038) FMID(HDP2230)
  .
```

END OF DOCUMENT

PROGRAM DIRECTORY AND PRODUCT INSTALLATION READER'S COMMENT FORM

MVS/EXTENDED ARCHITECTURE DATA FACILITY PRODUCT
VERSION 2 RELEASE 3, MODIFICATION LEVEL 0

Please evaluate this program directory by using the following rating system:

Ratings: 1=Excellent 2=Very Good 3=Good 4=Fair 5=Poor

Characteristics	Product Installation Rating	Program Directory Rating
Process Accuracy		
JCL Examples		
User Friendliness		
Process Execution		
Completeness		

If you have specific comments, use the space below and attach additional sheets as needed.

If you desire a response, complete the following:

Name:
Company:
P.O. Box/Street:
City/State: ZIP Code:
Telephone: ( )

18187

Reader's Comment Form

Fold and tape | Please do not staple | Fold and tape

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, N.Y.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

IBM Corporation
P.O. Box 50020
Data Products Release Control, Department M14
San Jose, California 95150

Fold and tape | Please do not staple | Fold and tape

IBM

PRGDIR7F13

hv2605